

SCHEDULE 21

Section 138

APPROVED SHARE PLANS AND SCHEMES

PART 1

SHARE INCENTIVE PLANS

<i>Introductory</i>	5
1 Schedule 2 to the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) (approved share incentive plans) is amended as follows.	
<i>Participation in more than one connected plan in a tax year</i>	
2 After paragraph 18 insert –	
“Participation in more than one connected SIP in a tax year	10
18A (1) The plan must provide that, if an individual participates in an award of shares under the plan in a tax year in which he has already participated in an award of shares under one or more other approved SIPs established by the company or a connected company –	15
(a) paragraph 35 (maximum annual award of free shares),	
(b) paragraph 46 (maximum amount of partnership share money deductions), and	
(c) paragraph 64 (limit on amount reinvested),	
apply as if the plan and the other plan or plans were a single plan.	20
(2) In this paragraph “connected company” has the same meaning as in paragraph 18.”.	
3 In paragraph 13 (eligibility of individuals: introduction), for the entry relating to paragraph 18 substitute –	
“paragraph 18 (requirement not to participate simultaneously in connected SIPs),	25
paragraph 18A (successive participation in connected SIPs),	
and”.	
4 In paragraph 14(7) (eligibility to participate dependent on certain requirements of plan being met), for paragraph (b) substitute –	30
“(b) not participating simultaneously in connected SIPs (see paragraph 18),	
(ba) successive participation in connected SIPs (see paragraph 18A), and”.	
5 In paragraph 18 (requirement not to participate in connected SIPs), omit sub-paragraph (1)(a) (successive participation in connected SIPs).	35

- 
- 6 After paragraph 71 insert –
- “Duty to monitor participants in connected schemes*
- 71A The trust instrument must require the trustees to maintain records of participants who have participated in one or more other approved SIPs established by the company or a connected company.”. 5

*Partnership shares*

- 7 (1) Paragraph 46 (maximum amount of partnership share money deductions) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1), for the words after “must not exceed” substitute “£1,500 in any tax year.”. 10
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2), for the words after “an employee’s salary” substitute “for any tax year must not exceed 10% of the employee’s salary for the tax year.”.
- (4) After that sub-paragraph insert – 15
- “(4A) A limit lower than that specified in sub-paragraph (2) may be framed –
- (a) as a proposition substituting a percentage lower than that so specified, or
- (b) as a proposition that a particular description of earnings is not to be regarded as forming part of an employee’s salary for the purposes of that sub-paragraph.”. 20
- (5) Sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) have effect for the year 2003-04 and subsequent years of assessment.
- 8 In paragraph 47 (minimum amount of deductions) – 25
- (a) for “in any month” substitute “on any occasion”, and
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (3).

*Dividend shares*

- 9 In paragraph 67 (holding period for dividend shares), for “must be 3 years” substitute “is the period – 30
- (a) beginning with the date on which the dividend shares are acquired, and
- (b) ending with the period of 5 years starting with the date of the award of the shares in respect of which the dividend applied to acquire the dividend shares was paid”. 35
- 10 In paragraph 80(5) (meaning of “relevant dividend” for purposes of provisions about information to be provided) –
- (a) for “period of 3 years beginning with the date on which they were acquired on a participant’s behalf” substitute “holding period”, and
- (b) for “the participant’s” substitute “a participant’s”. 40

- 11 In paragraph 100 (index of defined expressions), in the entry relating to “holding period”, for the words in the second column substitute “paragraphs 36 and 67”.
- 12 In section 68B(2) of the Taxes Act 1988 (charge on dividend shares ceasing to be subject to plan: foreign cash dividends), for “period of three years beginning with the date on which the shares were acquired on the participant’s behalf” substitute “holding period”. 5
- 13 In section 251C(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 (charge on dividend shares ceasing to be subject to plan), for “period of three years beginning with the date on which the shares were acquired on the participant’s behalf” substitute “holding period”. 10
- 14 In section 501(3)(b) of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) (charge on capital receipts in respect of plan shares), for the words after “dividend shares” substitute “in respect of, or by reference to, which the capital receipt is received before the end of the holding period.”. 15
- 15 Paragraphs to 9 to 14 have effect in relation to dividend shares acquired on or after the day on which this Act is passed.

## PART 2

### SAYE OPTION SCHEMES

- Introductory* 20
- 16 Schedule 3 to the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (approved SAYE option schemes) is amended as follows.

#### *Minor correction*

- 17 In paragraph 25(3)(a) (limit on contributions under CCS schemes linked to approved SAYE schemes), after “SAYE” insert “option”. 25

#### *Exercise of options: scheme-related employment ends because of change of control or transfer*

- 18 (1) Paragraph 34 (exercise of options: scheme-related employment ends) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (2)(a), after “1996” insert “or ER(NI)O 1996”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (5) – 30
- (a) for “provide that,” substitute “make provision about the time when the options may be exercised”, and
- (b) omit the words following paragraph (b).
- (4) After that sub-paragraph insert –
- “(5A) If the scheme makes provision by virtue of sub-paragraph (5), the provision must be either – 35
- (a) that the options may be exercised within 6 months after the termination date, or
- (b) that the options may be exercised within 6 months after the date (if any) when P ceases to hold the employment which (before the termination date) was the scheme-related 40

employment for a reason within sub-paragraph (2)(a) or (b).”.

#### *Alteration of schemes*

- 19 (1) Paragraph 42 (withdrawal of approval) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (2), after “to be met;” insert – 5  
     “(aa) an alteration is made in a key feature of the scheme without the approval of the Inland Revenue;”.
- (3) After that sub-paragraph insert –  
     “(2A) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(aa) the Inland Revenue may not withhold their approval unless it appears to them at the time in question that the scheme as proposed to be altered would not then be approved on an application under paragraph 40. 10  
     (2B) For the purposes of that sub-paragraph a “key feature” of a scheme is a provision of the scheme which is necessary in order to meet the requirements of this Schedule.”. 15
- (4) For paragraph 43 (approval ineffective after unapproved alteration and notice of decisions) and the heading before it substitute –  
     “*Notice of decision about alteration*
- 43 Where the Inland Revenue –  
     (a) have been requested to approve any alteration in a SAYE option scheme that has been approved, and 20  
     (b) have decided whether or not to approve the alteration, they must give notice of their decision to the scheme organiser.”.
- (5) For paragraph 44(1)(b) (appeal against decision not to approve alteration) substitute – 25  
     “(b) decide to refuse approval under paragraph 42(2)(aa).”.

### PART 3

#### CSOP SCHEMES

#### *Introductory*

- 20 The Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) is amended as follows. 30

#### *Exercise of options: exclusion of income tax liability*

- 21 (1) Section 524 (no charge in respect of exercise of option under CSOP scheme) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1)(b) substitute – 35  
     “(b) Condition A or B is met.”.
- (3) For subsections (2) and (3) substitute –  
     “(2) Condition A is that the option is exercised –

- 
- (a) on or after the third anniversary of the date on which it was granted, but
- (b) not later than the tenth anniversary of that date.
- (2A) Condition B is that the option –
- (a) is exercised before the third anniversary of the date on which it was granted, and 5
- (b) is so exercised by virtue of a provision included in the scheme under paragraph 24 of Schedule 4 (exercise of options after ceasing to be director or employee) in circumstances in which subsection (2B) applies. 10
- (2B) This subsection applies if the individual exercising the option –
- (a) has ceased to be a full-time director or qualifying employee of the scheme organiser (or, in the case of a group scheme, a constituent company) because of injury, disability, redundancy or retirement, and 15
- (b) exercises the option within 6 months of the day on which he ceases to be such a director or employee.
- (2C) In subsection (2B) –
- “redundancy” means redundancy within the meaning of ERA 1996 or ER(NI)O 1996, and 20
- “retirement” means retirement on or after reaching a retirement age specified in the scheme.”.
- (4) For section 525(1)(b) (no charge in respect of post-acquisition benefits) substitute –
- “(b) Condition A or B (as set out in section 524(2) or (2A)) is met.”. 25
- (5) This paragraph has effect in relation to any exercise of an option on or after 9th April 2003.
- 22 (1) Schedule 4 (approved CSOP schemes) is amended as follows.
- (2) After paragraph 35 insert –
- “Retirement age 30
- 35A A retirement age specified in a CSOP scheme –
- (a) must be the same for men and women, and
- (b) must not be less than 55.”.

*Meaning of “material interest”*

- 23 (1) In paragraphs 10(2) and (3), 11(3) and (4) and 13(2) (material interest), for “10%” substitute “25%”. 35
- (2) This paragraph has effect for the purpose of determining whether a person is eligible to participate in a scheme on the date on which this Act is passed or any later date (by altering what constitutes a material interest on that date and within the 12 months preceding that date). 40

*Alteration of schemes*

- 24 (1) Paragraph 30 (withdrawal of approval) is amended as follows.

- 
- (2) In sub-paragraph (2), after “to be met;” insert –  
 “(aa) an alteration is made in a key feature of the scheme without the approval of the Inland Revenue;”.
- (3) After that sub-paragraph insert –
- “(3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(aa) the Inland Revenue may not withhold their approval unless it appears to them at the time in question that the scheme as proposed to be altered would not then be approved on an application under paragraph 28. 5
- “(4) For the purposes of that sub-paragraph a “key feature” of a scheme is a provision of the scheme which is necessary in order to meet the requirements of this Schedule.”. 10
- (4) For paragraph 31 (approval ineffective after unapproved alteration and notice of decisions) and the heading before it substitute –
- “Notice of decision about alteration*
- 31 Where the Inland Revenue – 15
- (a) have been requested to approve any alteration in a CSOP scheme that has been approved, and
- (b) have decided whether or not to approve the alteration, they must give notice of their decision to the scheme organiser.”.
- (5) For paragraph 32(1)(b) (appeal against decision not to approve alteration) substitute – 20
- “(b) decide to refuse approval under paragraph 30(2)(aa).”.

#### PAYE

- 25 (1) Section 701(2)(c) (PAYE: exclusions from meaning of “asset”) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In sub-paragraph (i), omit “or 4 (approved CSOP schemes)”.
- (3) After that sub-paragraph insert –
- “(ia) any shares acquired by the employee (whether or not as a result of the exercise of a right to acquire shares) under a scheme approved under Schedule 4 (approved CSOP schemes), other than shares acquired as a result of the exercise of the right before the third anniversary of the date on which it was granted or later than the tenth anniversary of that date;”. 30
- (4) In sub-paragraph (ii), for “such a scheme” substitute “a scheme such as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (i) or (ia)”. 35
- (5) This paragraph has effect in relation to shares acquired on or after 9th April 2003.

SCHEDULE 22

Section 139

EMPLOYEE SECURITIES AND OPTIONS

*Introductory*

- 1 The Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) is amended as follows. 5

*Main provisions*

- 2 (1) For Chapter 1 of Part 7 (and the heading of that Part) substitute—

“EMPLOYMENT INCOME: INCOME AND EXEMPTIONS RELATING TO SECURITIES

**CHAPTER 1**

INTRODUCTION 10

*General*

**417 Scope of Part 7**

- (1) This Part contains special rules about cases where securities, interests in securities or securities options are acquired in connection with an employment. 15
- (2) The rules are contained in—  
Chapter 2 (restricted securities),  
Chapter 3 (convertible securities),  
Chapter 3A (securities with artificially depressed market value), 20  
Chapter 3B (securities with artificially enhanced market value),  
Chapter 3C (securities acquired for less than market value),  
Chapter 3D (securities disposed of for more than market value),  
Chapter 4 (post-acquisition benefits from securities),  
Chapter 5 (securities options), 25  
Chapter 6 (approved share incentive plans),  
Chapter 7 (approved SAYE option schemes),  
Chapter 8 (approved CSOP schemes),  
Chapter 9 (enterprise management incentives), and  
Chapter 10 (priority share allocations). 30
- (3) The following make provision for amounts to count as employment income—  
Chapters 2 to 6, and  
Chapter 8.
- (4) The following make provision for exemptions and reliefs from income tax—  
Chapters 2 and 3, and  
Chapters 5 to 10. 35

- (5) Chapter 11 contains supplementary provisions relating to employee benefit trusts.
- (6) Section 5(1) (application of employment income Parts to office-holders generally) does not apply to Chapters 6 to 10; and section 549(5) makes provision about its application to Chapter 11. 5
- 418 Other related provisions**
- (1) In Part 3 –  
Chapter 1 (earnings), and  
Chapter 10 (taxable benefits: residual liability to charge),  
may also have effect in relation to securities and interests in securities (but not securities options). 10
- (2) Part 7 of Schedule 7 (transitional provisions relating to securities and securities options) may also be relevant.
- (3) In view of section 49 of FA 2000 (phasing out of APS schemes) the following are not rewritten in this Act and continue in force unaffected by the repeals made by this Act – 15  
section 186 of ICTA (APS schemes) and section 187 of that Act (interpretation) so far as relating to APS schemes, and  
Schedule 9 to ICTA (approval of share schemes) so far as relating to APS schemes and Schedule 10 to that Act (further provisions about APS schemes). 20  
“APS schemes” means profit sharing schemes approved under Schedule 9 to ICTA.
- (4) Sections 138 to 140 of ICTA (share acquisitions by directors and employees) continue to apply in relation to shares or interests in shares acquired before 26th October 1987 (see paragraph 57 of Schedule 7). 25
- 419 Negative amounts treated as nil**
- If the result given by any formula under any provision of this Part would otherwise be a negative amount, the result is to be taken to be nil instead. 30

*Interpretation of Chapters 1 to 5*

**420 Meaning of “securities” etc**

- (1) Subject to subsections (5) and (6), for the purposes of this Chapter and Chapters 2 to 5 the following are “securities” – 35
- (a) shares in any body corporate (wherever incorporated) or in any unincorporated body constituted under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom,
- (b) debentures, debenture stock, loan stock, bonds, certificates of deposit and other instruments creating or acknowledging indebtedness, 40
- (c) warrants and other instruments entitling their holders to subscribe for securities (whether or not in existence or identifiable),



- (d) certificates and other instruments conferring rights in respect of securities held by persons other than the persons on whom the rights are conferred and the transfer of which may be effected without the consent of those persons,
  - (e) units in a collective investment scheme, 5
  - (f) futures, and
  - (g) rights under contracts for differences or contracts similar to contracts for differences.
- (2) In subsection (1)(e) “collective investment scheme” means arrangements – 10
- (a) which are made with respect to property of any description, including money, and
  - (b) the purpose or effect of which is to enable persons taking part in the arrangements (whether by becoming owners of the property or any part of it or otherwise) to participate in or receive profits or income arising from the acquisition, holding, management or disposal of the property or sums paid out of such profits or income. 15
- (3) In subsection (1)(f) “futures” means rights under a contract for the sale of a commodity or other property under which delivery is to be made at a future date at a price agreed when the contract is made; and for this purpose a price is to be taken to be agreed when the contract is made – 20
- (a) if it is left to be determined by reference to the price at which a contract is to be entered into on a market or exchange or could be entered into at a time and place specified in the contract, and 25
  - (b) in a case where the contract is expressed to be by reference to a standard lot and quality, even if provision is made for a variation in the price to take account of any variation in quantity or quality on delivery. 30
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (1)(g) a contract similar to a contract for differences is a contract –
- (a) which is not a contract for differences, but
  - (b) the purpose or pretended purpose of which is to secure a profit or avoid a loss by reference to fluctuations in the value or price of property or an index or other factor designated in the contract. 35
- (5) The following are not “securities” for the purposes of this Chapter or Chapters 2 to 5 – 40
- (a) cheques and other bills of exchange, bankers’ drafts and letters of credit (other than bills of exchange accepted by a banker),
  - (b) money and statements showing balances on a current, deposit or savings account, 45
  - (c) leases and other dispositions of property and heritable securities,

- (d) rights under contracts of insurance (within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001), and
- (e) options.
- (6) The Treasury may by order amend subsections (1) to (5). 5
- (7) An order under subsection (6) may include any appropriate consequential provision (including provision amending any enactment).
- (8) In this Chapter and Chapters 2 to 5 –
- “interest”, in relation to securities (or shares), means an interest in them less than full beneficial ownership and includes an interest in proceeds of their sale, but does not include a right to acquire them, 10
- “securities option” means a right to acquire securities, and
- “shares” includes stock. 15
- 421 Meaning of “market value” etc**
- (1) In this Chapter and Chapters 2 to 5 “market value” has the same meaning as it has for the purposes of TCGA 1992 by virtue of Part 8 of that Act.
- (2) Where consideration for anything is given in the form of an asset (as opposed to a payment), any reference in this Chapter or any of Chapters 2 to 5 to the amount of the consideration is to the market value of the asset. 20
- 421A Meaning of “consideration”**
- (1) This section applies for determining for the purposes of Chapters 2 to 5 the amount of the consideration given for anything. 25
- (2) If any consideration is given partly in respect of one thing and partly in respect of another, the amount given in respect of the different things is to be determined on a just and reasonable apportionment.
- (3) The consideration which is taken to be given wholly or partly for anything does not include the performance of any duties of, or in connection with, an employment. 30
- (4) No amount is to be counted more than once in calculating the amount of any consideration.
- Application of Chapters 2 to 4* 35
- 421B Application of Chapters 2 to 4**
- (1) Subject as follows (and to any provision contained in Chapters 2 to 4) those Chapters apply to securities, or an interest in securities, acquired by a person where the right or opportunity to acquire the securities or interest is available by reason of an employment of that person or any other person. 40
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) –

- (a) securities are, or an interest in securities is, acquired at the time when a beneficial interest is acquired (and not, if different, the time when the securities are, or interest is, conveyed or transferred), and
  - (b) “employment” includes a former or prospective employment. 5
- (3) A right or opportunity to acquire securities or an interest in securities made available by a person’s employer, or by a person connected with a person’s employer, is to be regarded for the purposes of subsection (1) as available by reason of an employment of that person unless— 10
  - (a) the person by whom the right or opportunity is made available is an individual, and
  - (b) the right or opportunity is made available in the normal course of the domestic, family or personal relationships of that person. 15
- (4) Chapters 2 to 4 cease to apply to securities, or an interest in securities, when subsection (5), (6) or (7) is satisfied.
- (5) This subsection is satisfied immediately after the securities are, or the interest in securities is, disposed of otherwise than to an associated person. 20
- (6) This subsection is satisfied immediately before the death of the employee.
- (7) This subsection is satisfied 7 years after the first date after the acquisition on which the employee is an employee of none of the following— 25
  - (a) the employer,
  - (b) (if the securities are, or the interest in securities is an interest in, securities issued by a company) the company by which they are issued, or 30
  - (c) a person connected with a person within paragraph (a) or (b).
- (8) In this Chapter and Chapters 2 to 4—
  - “the acquisition”, in relation to employment-related securities, means the acquisition of the employment-related securities pursuant to the right or opportunity available by reason of the employment, 35
  - “the employment”, in relation to employment-related securities, means the employment by reason of which the right or opportunity to acquire the employment-related securities is available (“the employee” and “the employer” being construed accordingly unless otherwise indicated), and 40
  - “employment-related securities” means securities or an interest in securities to which Chapters 2 to 4 apply (ignoring any provision of any of those Chapters which limits the application of the Chapter to a particular description or descriptions of employment-related securities). 45

**421C Associated persons**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter and Chapters 2 to 4 the following are “associated persons” in relation to employment-related securities –
- (a) the person who acquired the employment-related securities on the acquisition, 5
  - (b) (if different) the employee, and
  - (c) any relevant linked person.
- (2) A person is a relevant linked person if –
- (a) that person (on the one hand), and 10
  - (b) either the person who acquired the employment-related securities on the acquisition or the employee (on the other), are connected or, although not connected, are members of the same household.
- (3) But a company which would otherwise be a relevant linked person is not if it is –
- (a) the employer,
  - (b) the person from whom the employment-related securities were acquired,
  - (c) the person by whom the right or opportunity to acquire the employment-related securities was made available, or 20
  - (d) the person by whom the employment-related securities (or the securities in which they are an interest) were issued.

**421D Replacement and additional securities and changes in interests**

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) apply where an associated person is entitled to employment-related securities (the “original securities”) and either –
- (a) as a result of the conversion of the original securities (or the securities in which they are an interest), or of any other transaction or series of transactions, that person ceases to be entitled to the original securities but that person or another associated person acquires securities or an interest in securities (the “replacement securities”), or 30
  - (b) by virtue of that person being entitled to the original securities, that person or another associated person acquires other securities or an interest in other securities (the “additional securities”). 35
- (2) The replacement securities or the additional securities are to be regarded for the purposes of section 421B(1) (securities acquired pursuant to a right or opportunity available by reason of an employment) as acquired pursuant to the same right or opportunity as the original securities. 40
- (3) Where the market value of the original securities is reduced by reason of the issue of, or of securities including, the replacement securities or the additional securities (or the securities in which they are an interest), the amount of that reduction is to be treated for the purposes of Chapters 2 and 3 as consideration or additional 45

consideration given for the acquisition of the replacement securities or the additional securities.

- (4) Subsections (2) and (3) apply whether or not the replacement securities, or the additional securities, were acquired for consideration. 5
- (5) Where Chapters 2 to 4 apply to an interest in securities, an increase of that interest is to be treated for the purposes of section 421B(1) (securities acquired pursuant to a right or opportunity available by reason of an employment) as a separate interest acquired pursuant to the same right or opportunity as the original interest. 10
- (6) Where Chapters 2 to 4 apply to an interest in securities, a reduction of that interest (otherwise than by a disposal to an associated person) is to be treated for the purposes of those Chapters as the disposal otherwise than to an associated person of a separate interest proportionate to the reduction. 15

**421E Exclusions: residence etc**

- (1) Chapters 2, 3 and 4 do not apply in relation to employment-related securities if, at the time of the acquisition, the earnings from the employment were not (or would not have been if there had been any) general earnings to which section 15 or 21 applies (earnings for year when employee resident and ordinarily resident in the UK). 20
- (2) Chapters 3A to 3D do not apply in relation to employment-related securities if, at the time of the acquisition, the earnings from the employment were not (or would not have been if there had been any) general earnings to which any of the charging provisions of Chapter 4 or 5 of Part 2 apply. 25
- (3) Chapters 2 to 4 do not apply in the case of a former employment if they would not apply if the acquisition had taken place in the last tax year in which the employment was held.
- (4) Chapters 2 to 4 do not apply in the case of a prospective employment if they would not apply if the acquisition had taken place in the first tax year in which the employment is held. 30
- (5) Where the employment-related securities are replacement securities or additional securities (within the meaning of section 421D), the references in this section to the acquisition are to the acquisition of the original securities (within the meaning of that section). 35

**421F Exclusions: public offers**

- (1) Chapters 2 to 4 do not apply in relation to employment-related securities that are shares acquired under the terms of an offer to the public or an interest in shares so acquired. 40
- (2) In a case within subsection (1) of section 544 (exemption for priority share allocations where offer to employees separate from public offer), any acquisition made under the terms of either the public offer or the employee offer within the meaning of that subsection is to be treated for the purposes of this section as made under the terms of an offer to the public. 45

- (3) Subsection (2) applies whether or not there is any benefit within section 544(2) (benefit derived from entitlement to priority allocation exempt from income tax).

#### **421G Exclusions: approved plan or scheme securities**

- Chapters 2 to 4 do not apply to – 5
- (a) shares awarded or acquired under an approved share incentive plan (within the meaning of Chapter 6 of this Part),
  - (b) shares acquired by the exercise of a share option granted under an approved SAYE option scheme (within the meaning of Chapter 7 of this Part), or 10
  - (c) shares acquired by the exercise of a share option granted under an approved CSOP scheme (within the meaning of Chapter 8 of this Part).

#### **421H Meaning of “employee-controlled” etc 15**

- (1) For the purposes of Chapters 2 to 4 a company is “employee-controlled” by virtue of shares of a class if –
- (a) the majority of the company’s shares of that class (other than any held by or for the benefit of an associated company) are held by or for the benefit of employees of the company or a company controlled by the company, and 20
  - (b) those employees are together able as holders of the shares to control the company.

In this subsection “employee” includes a person who is to be or has been an employee. 25

- (2) In this section and Chapters 2 to 4 “associated company” has the same meaning as, by virtue of section 416 of ICTA, it has for the purposes of Part 11 of ICTA.

#### **421I Consideration for acquisition of employment-related securities**

- (1) This section applies for determining for the purposes of Chapters 2 to 3A the amount of the consideration given for the acquisition of employment-related securities. 30
- (2) References to consideration given for the acquisition of the employment-related securities are to consideration given by – 35
- (a) the employee, or
  - (b) (if not the employee) the person by whom the employment-related securities were acquired.
- (3) The amount of the consideration given by a person for the acquisition of the employment-related securities includes the amount of any consideration given for a right to acquire the employment-related securities. 40
- (4) If the right to acquire the employment-related securities (“the new option”) is the whole or part of the consideration for the assignment or release of another right to acquire them (“the old option”), the amount of the consideration given for the new option is to be treated as being the sum of – 45

- (a) the amount by which the amount of the consideration given for the old option exceeds the amount of any consideration for the assignment or release of the old option, apart from the new option, and
  - (b) any valuable consideration given for the new option, apart from the old option. 5
- (5) Two or more transactions are to be treated for the purposes of subsection (4) as a single transaction by which a right to acquire the employment-related securities is assigned for a consideration which consists of or includes another right to acquire the employment-related securities if – 10
  - (a) the transactions result in a person ceasing to hold a right to acquire the employment-related securities and that person or a connected person coming to hold another right to acquire them, and 15
  - (b) one or more of the transactions is effected under arrangements to which two or more persons who hold rights to acquire the employment-related securities, in respect of which there may be a liability to tax under Chapter 5 of this Part (securities options), are parties. 20
- (6) Subsection (5) applies regardless of the order in which the assignment and the acquisition occur.
- (7) In this section “release”, in relation to a right to acquire the employment-related securities, includes agreeing to the restriction of the exercise of the right. 25

*Information*

**421J Duty to provide information**

- (1) This section applies in relation to reportable events.
- (2) Section 421K explains what are reportable events for the purposes of this section. 30
- (3) Each person who is a responsible person in relation to a reportable event must provide the Inland Revenue with particulars in writing of the reportable event before 7th July in the tax year following that in which the reportable event takes place.
- (4) The Inland Revenue may by notice require any person to provide them with such particulars of any reportable events – 35
  - (a) which take place in a period specified in the notice, and
  - (b) in relation to which that person is a responsible person, as are required by the notice or, if no reportable event in relation to which that person is a responsible person has taken place in that period, to state that fact. 40
- (5) A notice under subsection (4) must specify a date by which it must be complied with.
- (6) That date must not be less than 30 days after the date when the notice is given. 45

- (7) Once one person complies with the duty imposed by subsection (3) in relation to a reportable event, that subsection ceases to impose a duty on any other person in relation to the reportable event.
- (8) Once a person complies with the duty imposed by a notice under subsection (4) by providing the required particulars of a reportable event, subsection (3) ceases to impose a duty on that person or any other person in relation to that reportable event. 5
- (9) Section 421L explains who are the responsible persons in relation to a reportable event.
- (10) The particulars required by, or by a notice under, this section must be provided in a form specified by the Board of Inland Revenue. 10
- (11) A person need not provide particulars required by, or by a notice under, this section if they have been given in a notice under paragraph 44 of Schedule 5 (enterprise management incentives: notice of option to be given to Inland Revenue). 15  
In other respects the obligations imposed by, or by a notice under, this section and by that paragraph are independent of each other.
- (12) Paragraph 52 of that Schedule contains a duty to deliver annual returns where a company's shares are subject to a qualifying option within the meaning of that Schedule. 20

#### **421K Reportable events**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of section 421J (duty to provide information).
- (2) Each of the events mentioned in subsection (3) is a reportable event.
- (3) The events are – 25
- (a) an acquisition (or an event treated as an acquisition) of securities, an interest in securities or a securities option pursuant to a right or opportunity available by reason of the employment of the person who acquires the securities, interest in securities or securities option or of any other person, 30
- (b) an event which is a chargeable event in relation to securities, or an interest in securities, for the purposes of section 426 (chargeable events in relation to restricted securities and restricted interests in securities), 35
- (c) an event which is a chargeable event in relation to securities, or an interest in securities, for the purposes of section 438 (chargeable events in relation to convertible securities and interests in convertible securities),
- (d) the doing of anything which gives rise to a taxable amount counting as employment income under section 446L (artificial enhancement of market value of securities), 40
- (e) an event which discharges a notional loan relating to securities, or an interest in securities, under section 446U (securities and interests in securities acquired for less than market value), 45



- (f) a disposal of securities, or an interest in securities, by virtue of which Chapter 3D of this Part applies (securities and interests in securities disposed of for more than market value),
- (g) the receipt of a benefit which gives rise to a taxable amount counting as employment income under section 447 (charge on benefit from securities or interest in securities), 5
- (h) the assignment or release of a securities option acquired pursuant to a right or opportunity available by reason of the employment of the person who acquires the securities option or any other person, and 10
- (i) the receipt of a benefit in money or money's worth which is (or by virtue of section 477(6) is to be regarded as being) received in connection with such a securities option.

**421L Persons to whom section 421J applies** 15

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of section 421J (duty to provide information).
- (2) Each of the following persons is a responsible person in relation to a reportable event.
- (3) The persons are – 20
  - (a) the employer in question,
  - (b) any host employer of the employee in question,
  - (c) the person from whom the securities in question were, or interest or option in question was, acquired, and
  - (d) in relation to a reportable event concerning securities or an interest in securities which are not excluded securities, the person by whom the securities were issued. 25
- (4) In subsection (3)(b) “host employer” means a person other than the employer in question –
  - (a) for whom the employee in question works at the time of the reportable event, and 30
  - (b) who would, by virtue of subsection (2) of section 689 (employees of non-UK employers working for a person other than the employer), be treated for the purposes of PAYE regulations as making a payment of PAYE income of the employee in question if a payment to which subsection (5) would apply were made by the employer in question in respect of the period during which the employee works for the other person. 35
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4)(b) this subsection would apply to a payment if – 40
  - (a) it were a payment of PAYE income of the employee, and
  - (b) the conditions in subsection (1)(c) and (d) of section 689 were satisfied in relation to the payment.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (3)(d) securities are excluded securities in relation to a reportable event if they are – 45

- (a) loan stock, bonds or other instruments creating or acknowledging indebtedness issued by or on behalf of any national or regional government or local authority (in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) or any body whose members consists of states, national or regional governments or local authorities, or 5
- (b) securities which are issued by a person who, at the time of the reportable event, is not connected with the employer in question and which are listed or dealt in on a recognised stock exchange.”. 10
- (2) So far as relating to –
- (a) each of the new Chapters substituted or inserted in Part 7 by the following paragraphs, and
- (b) each of the Chapters of that Part as originally enacted for which new Chapters are substituted by the following paragraphs, 15
- sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made by the following paragraphs for the taking effect of the substitution or insertion.
- 3 (1) For Chapter 2 of Part 7 substitute –

**“CHAPTER 2**

RESTRICTED SECURITIES 20

*Introduction*

**422 Application of this Chapter**

This Chapter applies to employment-related securities if they are –

- (a) restricted securities, or
- (b) a restricted interest in securities, 25
- at the time of the acquisition.

**423 “Restricted securities” and “restricted interest in securities”**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter employment-related securities are restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities if –
- (a) there is any contract, agreement, arrangement or condition which makes provision to which any of subsections (2) to (4) applies, and 30
- (b) the market value of the employment-related securities is less than it would be but for that provision.
- (2) This subsection applies to provision under which – 35
- (a) there will be a transfer, reversion or forfeiture of the employment-related securities, or (if the employment-related securities are an interest in securities) of the interest or the securities, if certain circumstances arise or do not arise,
- (b) as a result of the transfer, reversion or forfeiture the person by whom the employment-related securities are held will cease to be entitled to any beneficial interest in the securities, and 40
- (c) that person will not be entitled on the transfer, reversion or forfeiture to receive in respect of the employment-related

securities an amount of at least their market value (determined as if there were no provision for transfer, reversion or forfeiture) at the time of the transfer, reversion or forfeiture.

- (3) This subsection applies to provision under which there is a restriction on— 5
- (a) the freedom of the person by whom the employment-related securities are held to dispose of the employment-related securities or proceeds of their sale,
  - (b) the right of that person to retain the employment-related securities or proceeds of their sale, or 10
  - (c) any other right conferred by the employment-related securities,
- (not being provision to which subsection (2) applies).
- (4) This subsection applies to provision under which the disposal or retention of the employment-related securities, or the exercise of a right conferred by the employment-related securities, may result in a disadvantage to— 15
- (a) the person by whom the employment-related securities are held, 20
  - (b) the employee (if not the person by whom they are held), or
  - (c) any person connected with the person by whom they are held or with the employee,
- (not being provision to which subsection (2) or (3) applies).

**424 Exceptions** 25

Employment-related securities are not restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities by reason only that any one or more of the following is the case—

- (a) the employment-related securities (or the securities in which they are an interest) are unpaid or partly paid shares which may be forfeited for non-payment of calls and there is no restriction on the meeting of calls by the person by whom they are held, 30
- (b) that person may be required to offer for sale or transfer the employment-related securities on the employee ceasing, as a result of misconduct, to be employed by the employer or a person connected with the employer, or 35
- (c) the employment-related securities (or the securities in which they are an interest) may be redeemed on payment of any amount. 40

*Tax exemption on acquisition*

**425 No charge in respect of acquisition in certain cases**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if the employment-related securities— 45
- (a) are restricted securities, or a restricted interest in securities, by virtue of subsection (2) of section 423 (provision for

	transfer, reversion or forfeiture) at the time of the acquisition, and	
	(b) will cease to be restricted securities, or a restricted interest in securities, by virtue of that subsection within 5 years after the acquisition (whether or not they may remain restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities by virtue of the application of subsection (3) or (4) of that section).	5
(2)	No liability to income tax arises in respect of the acquisition, except as provided by –	
	(a) Chapter 3 of this Part (acquisition by conversion),	10
	(b) Chapter 3C of this Part (acquisition for less than market value), or	
	(c) Chapter 5 of this Part (acquisition pursuant to securities option).	
(3)	But the employer and the employee may elect that subsection (2) is not to apply to the employment-related securities.	15
(4)	An election under subsection (3) –	
	(a) is to be made by agreement by the employer and the employee, and	
	(b) is irrevocable.	20
(5)	Such an agreement –	
	(a) must be made in a form approved by the Board of Inland Revenue, and	
	(b) may not be made more than 14 days after the acquisition.	
	<i>Tax charge on post-acquisition chargeable events</i>	25
<b>426</b>	<b>Charge on occurrence of chargeable event</b>	
(1)	This section applies if a chargeable event occurs in relation to the employment-related securities.	
(2)	The taxable amount determined under section 428 counts as employment income of the employee for the relevant tax year.	30
(3)	The “relevant tax year” is the tax year in which the chargeable event occurs.	
(4)	Section 427 explains what are chargeable events for the purposes of this section.	
(5)	This section is subject to section 429 (case outside charge under this section).	35
<b>427</b>	<b>Chargeable events</b>	
(1)	This section applies for the purposes of section 426 (charge on occurrence of chargeable event).	
(2)	Any of the events mentioned in subsection (3) is a “chargeable event” in relation to the employment-related securities.	40
(3)	The events are –	

- (a) the employment-related securities ceasing to be restricted securities, or a restricted interest in securities, in circumstances in which an associated person is entitled to a beneficial interest in the employment-related securities both before and after the event, 5
  - (b) the variation of any restriction relating to the employment-related securities in such circumstances (without the employment-related securities ceasing to be restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities), and
  - (c) the disposal for consideration of the employment-related securities, or any interest in them, by an associated person otherwise than to another associated person (at a time when they are still restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities). 10
- (4) For the purposes of this Chapter there is a variation of a restriction relating to the employment-related securities if any restriction in relation to them is removed or varied. 15

**428 Amount of charge**

- (1) The taxable amount for the purposes of section 426 (charge on occurrence of chargeable event) is— 20
- $$\text{UMV} \times (\text{IUP} - \text{PCP} - \text{OP}) - \text{CE}$$
- (2) UMV is what would be the market value of the employment-related securities immediately after the chargeable event but for any restrictions (unless subsection (3) applies).
- (3) Where the chargeable event is one within section 427(3)(c) (disposal) and the consideration given for the employment-related securities, or the interest in them that is disposed of, on the disposal is less than what would be UMV under subsection (2), UMV is the amount of the consideration given. 25

- (4) IUP is— 30
- $$\frac{\text{IUMV} - \text{DA}}{\text{IUMV}}$$

where—

IUMV is what would have been the market value of the employment-related securities at the time of the acquisition but for any restrictions, and 35

DA is the total of any deductible amounts.

- (5) PCP is the aggregate of the result of the application of the formula— 40
- $$\text{IUP} - \text{PCP} - \text{OP}$$
- on each previous event (if any) occurring since the acquisition that was a chargeable event for the purposes of section 426 in relation to the employment-related securities (and so is nil if there has not been such a previous event).

- (6) OP is –

$$\frac{\text{UMV} - \text{AMV}}{\text{UMV}}$$

where AMV is the actual market value of the employment-related securities immediately after the chargeable event.

- (7) CE is any expenses incurred by the holder of the employment-related securities in connection with – 5
- (a) the employment-related securities ceasing to be restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities,
  - (b) the variation of a restriction relating to the employment-related securities, or 10
  - (c) the disposal of the employment-related securities,
- together (if the chargeable event is one within section 427(3)(a) or (b) (lifting of restrictions and variation of restriction)) with any consideration given for the employment-related securities ceasing to be restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities or the variation of a restriction relating to the employment-related securities. 15
- (8) For the purposes of this section each of the following is a “deductible amount” –
- (a) the amount of any consideration given for the acquisition of the employment-related securities, 20
  - (b) any amount that constituted earnings from the employee’s employment under Chapter 1 of Part 3 (earnings) in respect of the acquisition of the employment-related securities,
  - (c) any amount that counted as employment income in relation to the employment-related securities under Chapter 2 or 4 of this Part as originally enacted, 25
  - (d) if a notional loan was treated as made to the employee in respect of the acquisition of the employment-related securities under Chapter 3C of this Part (acquisition of securities for less than market value), the amount of the notional loan initially outstanding, and 30
  - (e) if the acquisition of the employment-related securities was pursuant to a securities option, any amount that counted as employment income of the employee under section 476 (or section 476 or 477 as originally enacted) (acquisition of securities pursuant to securities option) by reason of the acquisition. 35
- (9) If the employment-related securities are convertible securities, or an interest in convertible securities, their market value is to be determined for the purposes of this section as if they were not. 40

#### 429 Case outside charge under section 426

- (1) Section 426 (charge on occurrence of chargeable event) does not apply if –
- (a) the employment-related securities are shares (or an interest in shares) in a company of a class, 45

- (b) the provision by virtue of which the employment-related securities are restricted securities, or a restricted interest in securities, applies to all the company's shares of the class,
  - (c) all the company's shares of the class (other than the employment-related securities) are affected by an event similar to that which is a chargeable event in relation to the employment-related securities, and 5
  - (d) subsection (3) or (4) is satisfied.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c) shares are affected by an event similar to that which is a chargeable event in relation to the employment-related securities – 10
  - (a) in the case of a chargeable event within section 427(3)(a) (lifting of restrictions), if the provision mentioned in subsection (1)(b) ceases to apply to them,
  - (b) in the case of a chargeable event within section 427(3)(b) (variation of restriction), if that provision is varied in relation to them in the same way as in relation to the employment-related securities, or 15
  - (c) in the case of a chargeable event within section 427(3)(c) (disposal), if they are disposed of. 20
- (3) This subsection is satisfied if, immediately before the event that would be a chargeable event, the company is employee-controlled by virtue of holdings of shares of the class.
- (4) This subsection is satisfied if, immediately before that event, the majority of the company's shares of the class are not held by or for the benefit of any of the following – 25
  - (a) employees of the company,
  - (b) persons who are related to an employee of the company,
  - (c) associated companies of the company,
  - (d) employees of any associated company of the company, or 30
  - (e) persons who are related to an employee of any such associated company.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4) a person is related to an employee if –
  - (a) the person acquired the shares pursuant to a right or opportunity available by reason of the employee's employment, or 35
  - (b) the person is connected with a person who so acquired the shares or with the employee and acquired the shares otherwise than by or under a disposal made by way of a bargain at arm's length from the employee or another person who is related to the employee. 40

**430 Election for outstanding restrictions to be ignored**

- (1) The employer and the employee may elect that –
  - (a) on a chargeable event the taxable amount for the purposes of section 426 is to be determined by applying section 428(1) as if it did not include a reference to OP, and 45

- (b) sections 426 to 429 are not to apply to the employment-related securities after that chargeable event.
- (2) An election under this section –
- (a) is to be made by agreement by the employer and the employee, and 5
- (b) is irrevocable.
- (3) Such an agreement –
- (a) must be made in a form approved by the Board of Inland Revenue, and
- (b) may not be made more than 14 days after the chargeable event. 10

*Supplementary*

**431 Election for full or partial disapplication of this Chapter**

- (1) The employer and the employee may elect in relation to employment-related securities which are restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities that – 15
- (a) for the relevant tax purposes their market value at the time of the acquisition is to be calculated as if they were not, and
- (b) sections 425 to 430 are not to apply to the employment-related securities. 20
- (2) Or the employer and the employee may elect in relation to employment-related securities which are restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities that –
- (a) for the relevant tax purposes their market value at the time of the acquisition is to be calculated, and 25
- (b) sections 425 to 430 are to apply to the employment-related securities,  
as if any specified restriction did not apply to the employment-related securities.
- (3) For the purposes of subsections (1) and (2) “the relevant tax purposes” are – 30
- (a) determining any amount that is to constitute earnings from the employment under Chapter 1 of Part 3 (earnings),
- (b) determining the amount of any gain realised on the occurrence of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 439(3)(a) (conversion), 35
- (c) operating Chapter 3C of this Part (acquisition of securities for less than market value), and
- (d) determining any amount that counts as employment income of the employee under Chapter 5 of this Part (securities acquired pursuant to securities option). 40
- (4) An election under this section –
- (a) is to be made by agreement by the employer and the employee, and
- (b) is irrevocable. 45



- (5) Such an agreement –
  - (a) must be made in a form approved by the Board of Inland Revenue, and
  - (b) may not be made more than 14 days after the acquisition.

**432 Definitions** 5

- (1) In this Chapter –
  - “interest”, in relation to securities,
  - “securities”,
  - “securities option”, and
  - “shares”,have the meaning indicated in section 420. 10
- (2) In this Chapter “market value” has the meaning indicated in section 421(1).
- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter sections 421(2) and 421A apply for determining the amount of the consideration given for anything and section 421I applies for determining the amount of the consideration given for the acquisition of employment-related securities. 15
- (4) In this Chapter –
  - “the acquisition”,
  - “the employee” (except in section 429),
  - “the employer”,
  - “the employment”, and
  - “employment-related securities”,have the meaning indicated in section 421B(8). 20
- (5) In this Chapter “associated person” has the meaning indicated in section 421C. 25
- (6) In this Chapter –
  - “associated company”, and
  - “employee-controlled”,have the meaning indicated in section 421H. 30
- (7) In this Chapter –
  - “restricted interest in securities”, and
  - “restricted securities”,have the meaning indicated in sections 423 and 424.
- (8) In this Chapter “restriction”, in relation to securities or an interest in securities, means provision relating to the securities or interest which is made by any contract, agreement, arrangement or condition and to which any of subsections (2) to (4) of section 423 applies. 35
- (9) In this Chapter “variation”, in relation to a restriction, has the meaning indicated in section 427(4). 40
- (10) In this Chapter “convertible securities” has the same meaning as in Chapter 3 of this Part (see section 436).”.

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after such day as the Treasury may by order made by statutory instrument appoint but does not affect any securities, or interests in securities, acquired before 16th April 2003.

- 4 (1) For Chapter 3 of Part 7 substitute –

**“CHAPTER 3**

5

CONVERTIBLE SECURITIES

*Introduction*

**435 Application of this Chapter**

This Chapter applies to employment-related securities if they are –

- (a) convertible securities, or
- (b) an interest in convertible securities,

10

at the time of the acquisition.

**436 “Convertible securities”**

For the purposes of this Chapter securities are convertible securities if –

15

- (a) they confer on the holder an immediate or conditional entitlement to convert them into securities of a different description, or
- (b) a contract, agreement, arrangement or condition authorises or requires the grant of such an entitlement to the holder if certain circumstances arise, or do not arise.

20

*Tax relief on acquisition*

**437 Adjustment of charge**

For the purposes of –

25

- (a) any liability to tax under Chapter 1 of Part 3 (earnings), Chapter 10 of Part 3 (taxable benefits: residual liability to charge) or Chapter 5 of this Part (acquisition of securities pursuant to securities option), and
- (b) the operation of Chapter 3C of this Part (acquisition of securities for less than market value),

30

the market value of the employment-related securities is to be determined as if they were not convertible securities or an interest in convertible securities.

35

*Tax charge on post-acquisition chargeable events*

**438 Charge on occurrence of chargeable event**

- (1) This section applies if a chargeable event occurs in relation to the employment-related securities.

- (2) The taxable amount determined under section 440 counts as employment income of the employee for the relevant tax year.
- (3) The “relevant tax year” is the tax year in which the chargeable event occurs.
- (4) Section 439 explains what are chargeable events for the purposes of this section. 5
- (5) This section is subject to section 443 (case outside charge under this section).

**439 Chargeable events**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of section 438 (charge on occurrence of chargeable event). 10
- (2) Any of the events mentioned in subsection (3) is a “chargeable event” in relation to the employment-related securities.
- (3) The events are –
  - (a) the conversion of the employment-related securities (or the securities in which they are an interest) into securities of a different description in circumstances in which an associated person is entitled to a beneficial interest in the employment-related securities before the conversion and in the securities into which they are converted, 15  
20
  - (b) the disposal for consideration of the employment-related securities, or any interest in them, by an associated person otherwise than to another associated person (at a time when they are still convertible securities or an interest in convertible securities), 25
  - (c) the release for consideration of the entitlement to convert the employment-related securities (or the securities in which they are an interest) into securities of a different description in circumstances in which an associated person is entitled to a beneficial interest in the employment-related securities, and 30
  - (d) the receipt by an associated person of a benefit in money or money’s worth in connection with the entitlement to convert (other than securities acquired on the conversion of the employment-related securities or consideration such as is mentioned in paragraph (b) or (c)). 35
- (4) A benefit received on account of any disability (within the meaning of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995) of the employee is to be disregarded for the purposes of subsection (3)(d).

**440 Amount of charge**

- (1) The taxable amount for the purposes of section 438 (charge on occurrence of chargeable event) is –  
AG – CE 40
- (2) AG is the amount of any gain realised on the occurrence of the chargeable event.

- (3) CE is the amount of any consideration given for the entitlement to convert the employment-related securities or the securities in which they are an interest together with the amount of any expenses incurred by the holder of the employment-related securities in connection with the conversion, disposal, release or receipt. 5
- (4) Section 441 explains what is the amount of any gain realised on the occurrence of a chargeable event.
- (5) Section 442 explains whether consideration is given for the entitlement to convert the employment-related securities or the securities in which they are an interest and, if it is, what is its amount. 10

#### **441 Amount of gain realised on occurrence of chargeable event**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of section 440 (amount of charge on occurrence of chargeable event).
- (2) The amount of the gain realised on the occurrence of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 439(3)(a) (conversion) is – 15  

$$\text{CMVCS} - (\text{CMVERS} + \text{CC})$$
- (3) The amount of the gain realised on the occurrence of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 439(3)(b) (disposal) is –  

$$\text{DC} - \text{CMVERS}$$
- (4) The amount of the gain realised on the occurrence of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 439(3)(c) (release of entitlement to convert) is the amount of the consideration received by an associated person in respect of the release. 20
- (5) The amount of the gain realised on the occurrence of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 439(3)(d) (receipt of benefit) is the amount or market value of the benefit. 25
- (6) CMVCS –
- (a) if the employment-related securities are securities, is the market value at the time of the chargeable event of the securities into which they are converted (determined, where those securities are themselves convertible securities, as if they were not), or 30
- (b) if the employment-related securities are an interest in securities, is the same proportion of that market value as the market value of the interest in the securities in which the employment-related securities are an interest bears to the market value of those securities. 35
- (7) CMVERS is the market value of the employment-related securities at the time of the chargeable event determined as if they were not convertible securities or an interest in convertible securities. 40
- (8) CC is the amount of any consideration given for the conversion of the employment-related securities.
- (9) DC is the amount of the consideration given on the disposal.

**442 Amount of consideration given for entitlement to convert**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of section 440 (amount of charge on occurrence of chargeable event).
- (2) Consideration is to be regarded as given for the entitlement to convert the employment-related securities (or the securities in which they are an interest) if (and only if) ACS exceeds NCMV. 5
- (3) The amount of the consideration to be regarded as so given is the amount of the excess.
- (4) ACS is the amount of the consideration given for the acquisition of the employment-related securities. 10
- (5) NCMV is the market value of the employment-related securities at the time of the acquisition, determined as if they were not convertible securities or an interest in convertible securities.

**443 Case outside charge under section 438**

- (1) Section 438 (charge on occurrence of chargeable event) does not apply if—
  - (a) the employment-related securities are shares (or an interest in shares) in a company of a class,
  - (b) all the company's shares of the class are convertible securities, 20
  - (c) all the company's shares of the class (other than the employment-related securities) are affected by an event similar to that which is a chargeable event in relation to the employment-related securities, and
  - (d) subsection (3) or (4) is satisfied. 25
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c) shares are affected by an event similar to that which is a chargeable event in relation to the employment-related securities—
  - (a) in the case of a chargeable event within section 439(3)(a) (conversion), if they are converted into securities of a different description, 30
  - (b) in the case of a chargeable event within section 439(3)(b) (disposal), if they are disposed of,
  - (c) in the case of a chargeable event within section 439(3)(c) (release of entitlement to convert), if the entitlement to convert them into securities of a different description is released, or 35
  - (d) in the case of a chargeable event within section 439(3)(d) (receipt of benefit), if a similar benefit is received in respect of the entitlement to convert them. 40
- (3) This subsection is satisfied if, immediately before the event that would be a chargeable event, the company is employee-controlled by virtue of holdings of shares of the class.
- (4) This subsection is satisfied if, immediately before that event, the majority of the company's shares of the class are not held by or for the benefit of any of the following— 45

- (a) employees of the company,
  - (b) persons who are related to an employee of the company,
  - (c) associated companies of the company,
  - (d) employees of any associated company of the company, or
  - (e) persons who are related to an employee of any such associated company. 5
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4) a person is related to an employee if –
- (a) the person acquired the shares pursuant to a right or opportunity available by reason of the employee’s employment, or 10
  - (b) the person is connected with a person who so acquired the shares or with the employee and acquired the shares otherwise than by or under a disposal made by way of a bargain at arm’s length from the employee or another person who is related to the employee. 15

*Supplementary*

**444 Definitions**

- (1) In this Chapter –  
“interest”, in relation to securities, 20  
“securities”, and  
“shares”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 420.
- (2) In this Chapter “market value” has the meaning indicated in section 421(1). 25
- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter sections 421(2) and 421A apply for determining the amount of the consideration given for anything and section 421I applies for determining the amount of the consideration given for the acquisition of employment-related securities.
- (4) In this Chapter – 30  
“the acquisition”,  
“the employee” (except in section 443), and  
“employment-related securities”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 421B(8).
- (5) In this Chapter “associated person” has the meaning indicated in section 421C. 35
- (6) In this Chapter –  
“associated company”, and  
“employee-controlled”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 421H. 40
- (7) In this Chapter “convertible securities” has the meaning indicated in section 436.”.

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2) (so that, apart from section 437, the provisions of Chapter 3 of Part 7 as substituted by that sub-paragraph apply on and after that day in relation to employment-related securities irrespective of the date of the acquisition). 5
- 5 (1) After Chapter 3 of Part 7 insert –

### “CHAPTER 3A

#### SECURITIES WITH ARTIFICIALLY DEPRESSED MARKET VALUE

##### *Introduction*

#### **446A Application of this Chapter** 10

- (1) This Chapter applies in certain cases where the market value of employment-related securities (or other relevant securities or interests in securities) is reduced by things done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes.
- (2) The following are among the things that are, for the purposes of this Chapter, done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes – 15
- (a) anything done as part of a scheme or arrangement the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, of which is the avoidance of tax or national insurance contributions, and
  - (b) any transaction between companies which are members of the same group on terms which are not such as might be expected to be agreed between persons acting at arm’s length (other than a payment for group relief). 20
- (3) In subsection (2)(b) –
- (a) “group” means a company and its 51% subsidiaries, and 25
  - (b) “group relief” has the same meaning as in section 402(6) of ICTA.

##### *Tax charge on acquisition*

#### **446B Charge on acquisition**

- (1) This section applies where the market value of employment-related securities at the time of the acquisition has been reduced by at least 10% as a result of things done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes within the period of 7 years ending with the acquisition. 30
- (2) The taxable amount determined under section 446C counts as employment income of the employee for the tax year in which the acquisition occurs. 35
- (3) But this section does not apply if section 425(2) (no charge on acquisition of certain restricted securities or restricted interests in securities) applies in relation to the employment-related securities. 40

- (4) This section does not affect any liability to income tax arising in respect of the acquisition of the employment-related securities under –
- (a) Chapter 1 of Part 3 (earnings),
  - (b) Chapter 10 of Part 3 (taxable benefits: residual liability to charge), 5
  - (c) Chapter 3 of this Part (acquisition by conversion),
  - (d) Chapter 3C of this Part (acquisition for less than market value), or
  - (e) Chapter 5 of this Part (acquisition pursuant to securities option). 10

#### **446C Amount of charge**

- (1) The taxable amount for the purposes of section 446B (charge on acquisition) is –
- $$\text{FMV} - \text{MV} \quad 15$$
- (2) FMV is what would be the market value of the employment-related securities at the time of the acquisition if the things mentioned in section 446B(1) had not been done.
- (3) MV is the actual market value of the employment-related securities at the time of the acquisition. 20
- (4) But where what would be MV is less than the amount of any consideration given for the acquisition of the employment-related securities, MV is the amount of that consideration.
- (5) This section is subject to section 446D (restricted securities and convertible securities). 25

#### **446D Restricted securities and convertible securities**

- (1) Where the employment-related securities are restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities, FMV (but not MV) is to be determined as if the employment-related securities were not restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities; and, accordingly, sections 426 to 431 (post-acquisition charges on restricted securities) do not apply to the employment-related securities. 30
- (2) Where the employment-related securities are convertible securities or an interest in convertible securities, FMV and MV are to be determined as if they were not. 35

#### *Other tax charges*

#### **446E Charge on restricted securities**

- (1) This section applies where the market value of employment-related securities which are restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities is artificially low – 40
- (a) immediately after an event which is a chargeable event in relation to the employment-related securities for the purposes of section 426 (charge on restricted securities), or



- (b) on 5th April in any year.
- (2) The market value of the employment-related securities is artificially low where it has been reduced by at least 10% as a result of things done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes within the relevant period. 5
- (3) In a case within subsection (1)(a), the reference in subsection (2) of section 428 (amount of charge on restricted securities) to what would be the market value of the employment-related securities is, so far as it relates to subsection (1) of that section, a reference to what would be the market value but for the reduction as a result of the things done as mentioned in subsection (2) (and but for any restrictions). 10
- (4) In a case within subsection (1)(b), there shall be treated as occurring on the 5th April concerned a chargeable event within section 427(3)(a) (lifting of restrictions) in relation to the employment-related securities. 15
- (5) “The relevant period” is the period of 7 years ending with –  
(a) in a case within subsection (1)(a), the chargeable event concerned, or  
(b) in a case within subsection (1)(b), the 5th April concerned.
- (6) But if section 425(2) (no charge on acquisition of certain restricted securities or restricted interests in securities) applied in relation to the employment-related securities, the relevant period is the period beginning 7 years before the acquisition. 20

**446F Adjustment of market value: conditional interests**

- (1) This section applies where the market value of an employee’s interest in shares which is only conditional is artificially low immediately after a chargeable event relating to the shares under section 427 as originally enacted. 25
- (2) The market value of the shares is artificially low where it has been reduced by at least 10% as a result of things done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes within the period beginning – 30  
(a) 7 years before the chargeable event, or  
(b) with 16th April 2002,  
whichever is later.
- (3) There is a chargeable event in relation to shares if section 427 (as originally enacted) applies in relation to them. 35
- (4) The reference in the definition of MV in section 428(1) (as originally enacted) to the market value of the employee’s interest is to what would be the market value but for the reduction as a result of the things done as mentioned in subsection (2). 40
- (5) Expressions used in this section and in Chapter 2 of this Part as originally enacted have the same meaning in this section as in that Chapter.

**446G Adjustment of market value: consideration for entitlement to convert**

- (1) This section applies where the market value of employment-related securities which are convertible securities or an interest in convertible securities (determined as if they were not) has been reduced by at least 10% as a result of things done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes within the period of 7 years ending with the acquisition. 5
- (2) The reference to the market value of the employment-related securities in the definition of NCMV in section 442(5) (value of convertible securities at time of acquisition) is to what would be the market value but for the reduction as a result of the things done as mentioned in subsection (1) (and but for the fact that they are convertible securities or an interest in convertible securities). 10

**446H Adjustment of market value: charge on conversion**

- (1) This section applies where the market value of securities (“the converted securities”) into which employment-related securities (or securities in which employment-related securities are an interest) are converted is artificially low at the time of an event which is a chargeable event in relation to the employment-related securities by virtue of section 439(3)(a) (conversion). 15  
20
- (2) The market value of the converted securities is artificially low where it has been reduced by at least 10% as a result of things done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes within the period of 7 years ending with the chargeable event.
- (3) The references to the market value of the converted securities in the definition of CMVCS in section 441(6) (amount of gain realised by conversion) are to what would be the market value but for the reduction as a result of the things done as mentioned in subsection (2). 25

**446I Adjustment of consideration or benefit received** 30

- (1) This section applies where any consideration or benefit mentioned in—
- (a) section 428(3) (consideration on disposal of restricted securities),
  - (b) section 441(4), (5) or (9) (consideration for disposal of convertible shares or release of entitlement to convert or benefit received in respect of entitlement to convert), 35
  - (c) section 446C(4) (securities with artificially depressed market value: MV to be amount of consideration),
  - (d) sections 446X and 446Y(3) (consideration for disposal of securities exceeding market value), or 40
  - (e) section 448 (securities benefit not otherwise subject to tax),
- consists (in whole or in part) in the provision of securities or an interest in securities the market value of which is artificially low.
- (2) The market value of any securities or interest in securities is artificially low where it has been reduced by at least 10% as a result of things done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes 45

within the period of 7 years ending with the receipt of the consideration or benefit.

- (3) The market value of the consideration or benefit consisting in the provision of the securities or interest in securities is for the purposes of the provision or provisions concerned to be taken to be what it would be but for the reduction as a result of the things done as mentioned in subsection (2). 5

*Supplementary*

**446J Definitions**

- (1) In this Chapter –  
“interest”, in relation to securities, and  
“securities”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 420. 10
- (2) In this Chapter “market value” has the meaning indicated in section 421(1). 15
- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter sections 421(2) and 421A apply for determining the amount of the consideration given for anything and section 421I applies for determining the amount of the consideration given for the acquisition of employment-related securities.
- (4) In this Chapter –  
“the acquisition”,  
“the employee”, and  
“employment-related securities”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 421B(8). 20
- (5) In this Chapter –  
“restricted interest in securities”, and  
“restricted securities”,  
have the same meaning as in Chapter 2 of this Part (see sections 423 and 424). 25
- (6) In this Chapter “restriction” has the same meaning as in Chapter 2 of this Part (see section 432(8)). 30
- (7) In this Chapter “convertible securities” has the same meaning as in Chapter 3 of this Part (see section 436).”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after 16th April 2003 (so that sections 446A, 446F to 446H, 446I(1)(b) to (e), (2) and (3) and 446J apply on and after that date in relation to employment-related securities irrespective of the date of the acquisition). 35
- (3) Sections 446E and 446I(1)(a) do not affect any securities, or interests in securities, acquired before 16th April 2003; and, in relation to any securities or interests in securities acquired on or after that date but before the day appointed under paragraph 3(2), those provisions apply only on or after that appointed day. 40
- (4) Section 446F –

- (a) applies in relation to conditional interests in shares acquired before 16th April 2003, and
- (b) applies during the period beginning with that date and ending with the day preceding that appointed day in relation to conditional interests in shares acquired during that period. 5
- 6 (1) After Chapter 3A of Part 7 (inserted by paragraph 5(1)) insert –

**“CHAPTER 3B**

SECURITIES WITH ARTIFICIALLY ENHANCED MARKET VALUE

*Introduction*

**446K Application of this Chapter** 10

- (1) This Chapter applies in certain cases where the market value of employment-related securities is increased by things done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes.
- (2) The following are among the things that are, for the purposes of this Chapter, done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes – 15
- (a) anything done as part of a scheme or arrangement the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, of which is the avoidance of tax or national insurance contributions, and
- (b) any transaction between companies which are members of the same group on terms which are not such as might be expected to be agreed between persons acting at arm’s length (other than a payment for group relief). 20
- (3) In subsection (2)(b) –
- (a) “group” means a company and its 51% subsidiaries, and
- (b) “group relief” has the same meaning as in section 402(6) of ICTA. 25
- (4) In this Chapter, in relation to the market value of the employment-related securities –
- “non-commercial increase” means an increase in the market value as a result of anything done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes, and 30
- “non-commercial reduction” means a reduction in the market value as a result of anything done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes.

*Charge on non-commercial increases* 35

**446L Charge on non-commercial increases**

- (1) This section applies in relation to employment-related securities where on a date that is the valuation date in relation to a relevant period IMV is at least 10% greater than MV.
- (2) The taxable amount determined under subsection (4) counts as employment income of the employee for the relevant tax year (but subject to sections 446M and 446N). 40

- (3) The “relevant tax year” is the tax year in which the valuation date falls.
- (4) The taxable amount is –  
$$\text{IMV} - \text{MV}$$
- (5) IMV is the market value of the employment-related securities on the valuation date. 5
- (6) MV is the amount that would be the market value of the employment-related securities on the valuation date if any non-commercial increases during the relevant period were disregarded.
- (7) For the purposes of subsections (5) and (6) – 10
- (a) any restrictions having effect in relation to the employment-related securities on the valuation date, and
  - (b) any non-commercial reductions during the relevant period, are to be disregarded.
- 446M Securities subject to restriction on valuation date** 15
- (1) This section applies where on the valuation date the employment-related securities are relevant restricted securities.
- (2) The amount determined under section 446L(4) is to be multiplied by CP.
- (3) CP is – 20
- $$1 - \text{OP}$$
- where OP is the amount that would be determined under section 428(6) (amount of charge on chargeable event in relation to restricted securities) on the valuation date if there were on that date a chargeable event (resulting in no tax charge). 25
- (4) For the purposes of this section the employment-related securities are relevant restricted securities if they are restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities but are not subject to – 30
- (a) an election under section 430 (election to ignore outstanding restrictions) in relation to a chargeable event which occurred before the valuation date, or
  - (b) an election under section 431(1) (election to treat securities as not subject to restrictions).
- (5) If sections 425 to 430 apply to the employment-related securities in accordance with section 431(2) (election to treat securities as not subject to specified restrictions), the reference in subsection (3) to the amount that would be determined under section 428(6) is to the amount that would be so determined in accordance with section 431(2). 35
- 446N Securities subject to restriction during relevant period** 40
- (1) This section applies where the employment-related securities have been restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities at any time during the relevant period.

- (2) DA is to be deducted from the amount determined under section 446L(4) (or, where section 446M applies, the amount determined under sections 446L(4) and 446M).
- (3) DA is the aggregate of the amounts arrived at under subsection (4) in relation to each event occurring during the relevant period that is a chargeable event in relation to the employment-related securities. 5
- (4) The amount is –  

$$TA - ARTA$$
- (5) TA is the taxable amount actually determined under section 428 in relation to the chargeable event. 10
- (6) ARTA is the taxable amount which would have been determined under section 428 in relation to the chargeable event if any non-commercial increases during the period –  
 (a) beginning at the same time as the relevant period, and  
 (b) ending immediately before the chargeable event, 15  
 had been disregarded.

*Supplementary*

**446O “Relevant period” and “valuation date”**

- (1) This section explains what is meant by “relevant period” and “valuation date” in this Chapter. 20
- (2) The first relevant period in relation to employment-related securities is the period beginning with the date of the acquisition and ending with the following 5th April.
- (3) After the first relevant period, each period beginning with 6th April and ending with the following 5th April is a relevant period in relation to the employment-related securities. 25
- (4) But if this Chapter ceases to apply to the employment-related securities during a relevant period, the relevant period ends with the date on which this Chapter ceases to apply to them.
- (5) And if this Chapter ceases to apply to an interest in the employment-related securities during a relevant period, the relevant period ends in relation to that interest with the date on which this Chapter ceases to apply to that interest. 30
- (6) In a case where subsection (5) applies, this Chapter has effect separately in relation to that interest and the remainder of the employment-related securities. 35
- (7) In this Chapter “valuation date”, in relation to a relevant period, means the date with which the relevant period ends.

**446P Definitions**

- (1) In this Chapter “interest”, in relation to securities has the meaning indicated in section 420. 40

- (2) In this Chapter “market value” has the meaning indicated in section 421(1).
- (3) In this Chapter –  
“the acquisition”,  
“the employee”, and  
“employment-related securities”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 421B(8). 5
- (4) In this Chapter –  
“restricted interest in securities”, and  
“restricted securities”,  
have the same meaning as in Chapter 2 of this Part (see sections 423 and 424). 10
- (5) In this Chapter “chargeable event” means an event which is a chargeable event for the purposes of section 426.
- (6) In this Chapter “restriction” has the same meaning as in Chapter 2 of this Part (see section 432(8)). 15
- (7) In this Chapter –  
“non-commercial increase”, and  
“non-commercial reduction”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 446K(4). 20
- (8) In this Chapter  
“relevant period”, and  
“valuation date”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 446O.”.
- (2) Subject as follows, sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after 16th April 2003 (so that it applies on and after that date in relation to employment-related securities irrespective of the date of the acquisition). 25
- (3) Sections 446M and 446N do not affect any securities, or interests in securities, acquired before 16th April 2003; and, in relation to any securities or interests in securities acquired on or after that date but before the day appointed under paragraph 3(2), those sections apply only on and after that appointed day. 30
- (4) For the purposes of section 446O employment-related securities acquired before 16th April 2003 are to be treated as acquired on that date.
- 7 (1) After Chapter 3B of Part 7 (inserted by paragraph 6(1)) insert – 35

### “CHAPTER 3C

#### SECURITIES ACQUIRED FOR LESS THAN MARKET VALUE

#### **446Q Application of this Chapter**

- (1) This Chapter applies if –  
(a) no payment is made for employment-related securities at or before the time of the acquisition, or 40

- (b) the payment made for employment-related securities at or before that time is less than their market value.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) any obligation to make a payment or further payment after the time of the acquisition is to be disregarded. 5
- (3) Where the employment-related securities are, or are an interest in, securities which are not fully paid up, the reference in subsection (1) to the market value of the employment-related securities is to what it would be if the securities were fully paid up.
- (4) If section 425(2) (no charge on acquisition of certain restricted securities or restricted interests in securities) applies in relation to the employment-related securities, this Chapter has effect as if the employment-related securities were not acquired until the occurrence of the first event which is a chargeable event for the purposes of section 426 in relation to the employment-related securities. 10  
15
- (5) This section is subject to section 446R (case outside this Chapter).

#### 446R Case outside this Chapter

- (1) This Chapter does not apply if –
- (a) the employment-related securities are shares (or an interest in shares) in a company of a class, 20
- (b) all the company's shares of the class are acquired either for no payment or for a payment less than their market value, and
- (c) subsection (3) or (4) is satisfied. 25
- (2) Where the company's shares of the class are not fully paid up, the reference in subsection (1) to their market value is to what it would be if they were fully paid up.
- (3) This subsection is satisfied if, at the time of the acquisition of the employment-related securities, the company is employee-controlled by virtue of holdings of shares of the class. 30
- (4) This subsection is satisfied if, at that time, the majority of the company's shares of the class are not held by or for the benefit of any of the following –
- (a) employees of the company, 35
- (b) persons who are related to an employee of the company,
- (c) associated companies of the company,
- (d) employees of any associated company of the company, or
- (e) persons who are related to an employee of any such associated company. 40
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4) a person is related to an employee if –
- (a) the person acquired the shares pursuant to a right or opportunity available by reason of the employee's employment, or 45



- (b) the person is connected with a person who so acquired the shares or with the employee and acquired the shares otherwise than by or under a disposal made by way of a bargain at arm's length from the employee or another person who is related to the employee.

5

#### 446S Notional loan

- (1) Where this Chapter applies an interest-free loan (“the notional loan”) is to be treated as having been made to the employee by the employer at the time of the acquisition.
- (2) The provisions listed in subsection (3) apply as though the notional loan were an employment-related loan as defined in section 174 if and for so long as the employment has not terminated.
- (3) The provisions are –
- section 175 (benefit of taxable cheap loan treated as earnings),
  - section 178 (exception for loans where interest qualifies for tax relief),
  - section 180 (threshold for benefit of loan to be treated as earnings),
  - section 182 (normal method of calculation: averaging),
  - section 183 (alternative method of calculation),
  - section 184 (interest treated as paid),
  - section 185 (apportionment of cash equivalent in case of joint loan etc), and
  - section 187 (aggregation of loans by close company to director).

10

15

20

#### 446T Amount of notional loan

25

- (1) The amount of the notional loan initially outstanding is –  
$$MV - DA$$

where –

- MV is the market value of the employment-related securities at the time of the acquisition, and
- DA is the total of any deductible amounts.

30

- (2) Where the employment-related securities are, or are an interest in, securities which are not fully paid up, the reference in subsection (1) to the market value of the employment-related securities is to what it would be if the securities were fully paid up.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1) each of the following is a “deductible amount” –
- (a) any payment made for the employment-related securities by the employee, and any payment so made by the person by whom they were acquired (if not the employee), at or before the time of the acquisition,
  - (b) any amount that constitutes earnings from the employee's employment under Chapter 1 of Part 3 (earnings) in respect of the acquisition of the employment-related securities,
  - (c) if section 425(2) (no charge on acquisition of certain restricted securities or restricted interests in securities) applies in

35

40

45

- relation to the employment-related securities, any amount that counts as employment income of the employee under section 426 by reason of the first event which is a chargeable event for the purposes of that section in relation to the employment-related securities, 5
- (d) if the employment-related securities were acquired on a conversion of other employment-related securities, any amount that counts as employment income of the employee under section 438 (charge on conversion) by reason of the conversion, and 10
- (e) if the acquisition is pursuant to a securities option, any amount that counted as employment income of the employee under section 476 (acquisition of securities pursuant to securities option) in respect of the acquisition.
- (4) The amount of the notional loan outstanding at any subsequent time is the difference between – 15
- (a) the amount initially outstanding, and
- (b) the amount of any payments or further payments made for the employment-related securities after the acquisition but before that time. 20

#### **446U Discharge of notional loan**

- (1) The notional loan is treated as discharged when –
- (a) the employment-related securities are disposed of otherwise than to an associated person, or
- (b) if the employment-related securities were securities, or an interest in securities, not fully paid up at the time of the acquisition, the outstanding or contingent liability to pay for them is released, transferred or adjusted so as no longer to bind any associated person. 25
- (2) If the notional loan is discharged as the result of an event specified in subsection (1), the amount of the notional loan outstanding immediately before the occurrence of the event counts as employment income of the employee for the relevant tax year (whether or not the employment has terminated before or since the acquisition). 30
- (3) The “relevant tax year” is the tax year in which the notional loan is treated as discharged. 35
- (4) The notional loan is also treated as discharged when –
- (a) payments or further payments for the employment-related securities equal to the amount initially outstanding in relation to them have been made by an associated person, or 40
- (b) the employee dies.

#### **446V Chapter to be additional to other income tax charges**

- This Chapter does not affect any liability to income tax arising in respect of the acquisition under – 45
- (a) Chapter 1 of Part 3 (earnings),

- (b) Chapter 10 of Part 3 (taxable benefits: residual liability to charge),
- (c) Chapter 3 of this Part (acquisition by conversion),
- (d) Chapter 3A of this Part (securities with artificially depressed market value), or 5
- (e) Chapter 5 of this Part (acquisition of securities pursuant to securities option).

**446W Definitions**

- (1) In this Chapter –  
“interest”, in relation to securities, 10  
“securities”,  
“securities option”, and  
“shares”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 420.
- (2) In this Chapter “market value” has the meaning indicated in section 421(1). 15
- (3) In this Chapter “the acquisition” has the meaning indicated in section 421B(8) (but subject to section 446Q(4)).
- (4) In this Chapter –  
“the employment”, 20  
“the employee” (except in section 446R),  
“the employer”, and  
“employment-related securities”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 421B(8).
- (5) In this Chapter “associated person” has the meaning indicated in section 421C. 25
- (6) In this Chapter –  
“associated company”, and  
“employee-controlled”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 421H. 30
- (7) In this Chapter “the notional loan” has the meaning indicated in section 446S(1).”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to securities, and interests in securities, acquired on or after 16th April 2003.
- 8 (1) After Chapter 3C of Part 7 (inserted by paragraph 7(1)) insert – 35

**“CHAPTER 3D**

SECURITIES DISPOSED OF FOR MORE THAN MARKET VALUE

**446X Application of this Chapter**

This Chapter applies if –

- (a) employment-related securities are disposed of by an associated person so that no associated person is any longer entitled to a beneficial interest in them, and
- (b) the disposal is for a consideration which exceeds the market value of the employment-related securities at the time of the disposal. 5
- 446Y Amount treated as income**
- (1) Where this Chapter applies the amount determined under subsection (3) counts as employment income of the employee for the relevant tax year. 10
- (2) The “relevant tax year” is the tax year in which the disposal occurs.
- (3) The amount is—
- $$CD - MV - DA$$
- where—
- CD is the amount of the consideration given on the disposal, 15
- MV is the market value of the employment-related securities at the time of the disposal, and
- DA is the amount of any expenses incurred in connection with the disposal.
- 446Z Definitions** 20
- (1) In this Chapter “market value” has the meaning indicated in section 421(1).
- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter sections 421(2) and 421A apply for determining the amount of the consideration given for anything.
- (3) In this Chapter— 25
- “the employee”, and
- “employment-related securities”,
- have the meaning indicated in section 421B(8).
- (4) In this Chapter “associated person” has the meaning indicated in section 421C.”. 30
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to securities, and interests in securities, disposed of on or after 16th April 2003.
- 9 (1) For Chapter 4 of Part 7 substitute—

**“CHAPTER 4**

POST-ACQUISITION BENEFITS FROM SECURITIES 35

**447 Charge on other chargeable benefits from securities**

- (1) This Chapter applies if an associated person receives a benefit by virtue of the ownership of employment-related securities by that person or another associated person.
- (2) The taxable amount determined under section 448 counts as employment income of the employee for the relevant tax year. 40

- (3) The “relevant tax year” is the tax year in which the benefit is received.
- (4) This section does not apply if the benefit is otherwise chargeable to income tax.
- (5) This section is subject to section 449 (case outside this Chapter).

**448 Amount of charge** 5

The taxable amount for the purposes of section 447 (charge on other chargeable benefits) is the amount or market value of the benefit.

**449 Case outside this Chapter**

- (1) This Chapter does not apply if –
  - (a) the employment-related securities are shares (or an interest in shares) in a company of a class, 10
  - (b) a similar benefit is received by the owners of all the company’s shares of the class, and
  - (c) subsection (2) or (3) is satisfied.
- (2) This subsection is satisfied if, immediately before the receipt of the benefit, the company is employee-controlled by virtue of holdings of shares of the class. 15
- (3) This subsection is satisfied if, immediately before the receipt of the benefit, the majority of the company’s shares of the class are not held by or for the benefit of any of the following – 20
  - (a) employees of the company,
  - (b) persons who are related to an employee of the company,
  - (c) associated companies of the company,
  - (d) employees of any associated company of the company, or
  - (e) persons who are related to an employee of any such associated company. 25
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3) a person is related to an employee if –
  - (a) the person acquired the shares pursuant to a right or opportunity available by reason of the employee’s employment, or 30
  - (b) the person is connected with a person who so acquired the shares or with the employee and acquired the shares otherwise than by or under a disposal made by way of a bargain at arm’s length from the employee or another person who is related to the employee. 35

**450 Definitions**

- (1) In this Chapter –
  - “interest”, in relation to shares, and
  - “shares”, 40have the meaning indicated in section 420(8).
- (2) In this Chapter “market value” has the meaning indicated in section 421(1).

- (3) In this Chapter –  
“the employee” (except in section 449), and  
“employment-related securities”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 421B(8).
- (4) In this Chapter “associated person” has the meaning indicated in section 421C. 5
- (5) In this Chapter –  
“associated company”, and  
“employee-controlled”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 421H.”. 10
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraph (3), sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after 16th April 2003 (so that it applies on and after that date in relation to employment-related securities irrespective of the date of the acquisition).
- (3) The provisions of Chapter 4 as originally enacted which are mentioned in sub-paragraph (4) – 15
- (a) continue to apply in relation to shares, and interests in shares, acquired before 16th April 2003, and
- (b) apply in relation to shares, and interests in shares, acquired on or after that date until such day the day appointed under paragraph 3(2). 20
- In this sub-paragraph “shares” means shares in a company or securities as defined in section 254(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 issued by a company.
- (4) The provisions are –  
section 450(1), (2), (3)(a), (4), (5) and (6)(a), and  
sections 447 to 449, section 451, section 452(1) to (3), section 461(1) and (2), section 462, sections 464 to 466 and sections 468 to 470, so far as relevant for the purposes of those provisions of section 450 (or the other provisions mentioned in this subsection so far as so relevant). 25
- 10 (1) For Chapter 5 of Part 7 substitute –

**“CHAPTER 5** 30

SECURITIES OPTIONS

*Introduction*

**471 Options to which this Chapter applies**

- (1) This Chapter applies to a securities option acquired by a person where the right or opportunity to acquire the securities option is available by reason of an employment of that person or any other person. 35
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) “employment” includes a former or prospective employment.
- (3) A right or opportunity to acquire a securities option made available by a person’s employer, or a person connected with a person’s employer, is to be regarded for the purposes of subsection (1) as available by reason of an employment of that person unless – 40

- (a) the person by whom the right or opportunity is made available is an individual, and
  - (b) the right or opportunity is made available in the normal course of the domestic, family or personal relationships of that person. 5
- (4) A right or opportunity to acquire a securities option available by reason of holding employment-related securities is to be regarded for the purposes of subsection (1) as available by reason of the same employment as that by reason of which the right or opportunity to acquire the employment-related securities was available. 10
- (5) In this Chapter –
- “the acquisition”, in relation to an employment-related securities option, means the acquisition of the employment-related securities option pursuant to the right or opportunity available by reason of the employment, 15
  - “the employment” means the employment by reason of which the right or opportunity to acquire the employment-related securities option is available (“the employee” and “the employer” being construed accordingly), and
  - “employment-related securities option” means a securities option to which this Chapter applies. 20

#### 472 Associated persons

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter the following are “associated persons” in relation to an employment-related securities option –
- (a) the person who acquired the employment-related securities option on the acquisition, 25
  - (b) (if different) the employee, and
  - (c) any relevant linked person.
- (2) A person is a relevant linked person if –
- (a) that person (on the one hand), and 30
  - (b) either the person who acquired the employment-related securities option on the acquisition or the employee (on the other),
- are connected or, although not connected, are members of the same household. 35
- (3) But a company which would otherwise be a relevant linked person is not if it is –
- (a) the employer,
  - (b) the person from whom the employment-related securities option was acquired, or 40
  - (c) the person by whom the right or opportunity to acquire the employment-related securities option was made available.

#### 473 Introduction to taxation of securities options

- (1) The starting-point is that section 475 contains an exemption from the liability to tax that might otherwise arise under – 45
- (a) Chapter 1 of Part 3 (earnings), or

- (b) Chapter 10 of that Part (taxable benefits: residual liability to charge),  
when an employment-related securities option is acquired.
- (2) Liability to tax may arise when securities are acquired pursuant to the employment-related securities option under – 5
- (a) section 446B (charge on acquisition where market value of securities or interest artificially depressed),
- (b) Chapter 3C of this Part (acquisition of securities for less than market value), or
- (c) section 476 (acquisition of securities pursuant to securities option). 10
- (3) Liability to tax may also arise by virtue of section 476 when –
- (a) the employment-related securities option is assigned or released, or
- (b) a benefit is received in connection with the employment-related securities option. 15
- (4) There are special rules relating to share options acquired under –
- (a) approved SAYE option schemes (see Chapter 7 of this Part),
- (b) approved CSOP schemes (see Chapter 8 of this Part), or
- (c) enterprise management incentives (see Chapter 9 of this Part). 20

#### **474 Cases where this Chapter does not apply**

- (1) This Chapter (apart from sections 473 and 483) does not apply in relation to an employment-related securities option if, at the time of the acquisition, the earnings from the employment were not (or would not have been if there had been any) general earnings to which section 15 or 21 applies (earnings for year when employee resident and ordinarily resident in the UK). 25
- (2) This Chapter (apart from sections 473 and 483) does not apply in the case of a former employment if it would not apply if the acquisition had taken place in the last tax year in which the employment was held. 30
- (3) This Chapter (apart from sections 473 and 483) does not apply in the case of a prospective employment if it would not apply if the acquisition had taken place in the first tax year in which the employment is held. 35
- (4) Where the employment-related securities option is a new option (within the meaning of section 483), the references in this section to the acquisition are to the acquisition of the old option (within the meaning of that section). 40

#### *Tax relief on acquisition of option*

#### **475 No charge in respect of acquisition of option**

- (1) No liability to income tax arises in respect of the acquisition of an employment-related securities option.



- (2) Subsection (1) is subject to section 526 (approved CSOP schemes: charge where share option granted at a discount).

*Tax charge on post-acquisition chargeable events*

**476 Charge on occurrence of chargeable event**

- (1) This section applies if a chargeable event occurs in relation to an employment-related securities option. 5
- (2) The taxable amount determined under section 478 counts as employment income of the employee for the relevant tax year (but subject to subsection (5)).
- (3) The “relevant tax year” is the tax year in which the chargeable event occurs. 10
- (4) Section 477 explains what are chargeable events for the purposes of this section.
- (5) If the employee has been divested of the employment-related securities option by operation of law, the person who is the relevant person in relation to the chargeable event (see section 477(7)) is chargeable to tax under Case VI of Schedule D on the amount determined under section 478. 15
- (6) This section is subject to –
- section 519 (approved SAYE option schemes: no charge in respect of exercise of share option by employee), 20
  - section 524 (approved CSOP schemes: no charge in respect of exercise of share option by employee), and
  - section 530 (enterprise management incentives: no charge on exercise by employee of option to acquire shares at market value). 25

**477 Chargeable events**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of section 476 (charge on occurrence of chargeable event).
- (2) Any of the events mentioned in subsection (3) is a “chargeable event” in relation to the employment-related securities option unless it occurs on or after the death of the employee. 30
- (3) The events are –
- (a) the acquisition of securities pursuant to the employment-related securities option by an associated person, 35
  - (b) the assignment for consideration of the employment-related securities option by an associated person otherwise than to another associated person or the release for consideration of the employment-related securities option by an associated person, or 40
  - (c) the receipt by an associated person of a benefit in money or money’s worth in connection with the employment-related securities option (other than securities acquired pursuant to

the employment-related securities option or consideration for its assignment or release).

- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3)(a) securities are acquired at the time when a beneficial interest is acquired (and not, if different, the time when the securities are conveyed or transferred). 5
- (5) A benefit received on account of any disability (within the meaning of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995) of the employee is to be disregarded for the purposes of subsection (3)(c).
- (6) A benefit in money or money's worth received in consideration for or otherwise in connection with— 10
- (a) failing or undertaking not to acquire securities pursuant to the employment-related securities option, or
- (b) granting or undertaking to grant to another person a right to acquire securities which are subject to the employment-related securities option or any interest in them, 15
- is to be regarded for the purposes of subsection (3)(c) as received in connection with the employment-related securities option.
- (7) For the purposes of section 476(5) (charge under Case VI of Schedule D) the relevant person in relation to a chargeable event is—
- (a) in the case of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of subsection (3)(a), the person by whom the securities are acquired, 20
- (b) in the case of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of subsection (3)(b) or (c), the person by whom the consideration or benefit is received. 25

#### 478 Amount of charge

- (1) The taxable amount for the purposes of section 476 (charge on occurrence of chargeable event) is—
- $$AG - DA$$
- where— 30
- AG is the amount of any gain realised on the occurrence of the chargeable event, and
- DA is the total of any deductible amounts.
- (2) Section 479 explains what is the amount of any gain realised on the occurrence of a chargeable event. 35
- (3) Section 480 specifies what are deductible amounts.

#### 479 Amount of gain realised on occurrence of chargeable event

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of section 478 (amount of charge on occurrence of chargeable event).
- (2) The amount of the gain realised on the occurrence of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 477(3)(a) (acquisition of securities) is (subject to subsection (4))— 40
- $$MV - C$$
- (3) In subsection (2)—

MV is the market value of the securities that are acquired at the time when they are acquired, and

C is the amount of any consideration given for the securities that are acquired.

- (4) But the amount of the gain realised on the occurrence of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 477(3)(a) (acquisition of securities) is calculated – 5
- (a) if section 531 (enterprise management incentives: limitation of charge on exercise of option to acquire shares below market value) applies, in accordance with that section, and 10
  - (b) if section 532 (enterprise management incentives: modified tax consequences following disqualifying events) applies, in accordance with that section.
- (5) The amount of the gain realised on the occurrence of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 477(3)(b) (assignment or release of option) is the amount of the consideration given for the assignment or release. 15
- (6) The amount of the gain realised on the occurrence of an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 477(3)(c) (receipt of benefit in connection with option) is the amount or market value of the benefit. 20
- (7) But if –
- (a) the consideration mentioned in subsection (5), or
  - (b) the benefit mentioned in subsection (6),
- consists (in whole or in part) in the provision of securities or an interest in securities the market value of which has been reduced by at least 10% as a result of things done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes within the period of 7 years ending with the receipt of the consideration or benefit, its market value is to be taken to be what it would be but for the reduction. 25
- (8) The following are among the things that are, for the purposes of subsection (7), done otherwise than for genuine commercial purposes – 30
- (a) anything done as part of a scheme or arrangement the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, of which is the avoidance of tax or national insurance contributions, and 35
  - (b) any transaction between companies which are members of the same group on terms which are not such as might be expected to be agreed between persons acting at arm's length (other than a payment for group relief).
- (9) In subsection (8)(b) – 40
- (a) “group” means a company and its 51% subsidiaries, and
  - (b) “group relief” has the same meaning as in section 402(6) of ICTA.

#### 480 Deductible amounts

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of section 478 (amount of charge on occurrence of chargeable event). 45

- 
- (2) The amount of –
- (a) any consideration given for the acquisition of the employment-related securities option, and
  - (b) the amount of any expenses incurred in connection with the acquisition of securities, assignment, release or receipt which constitutes the chargeable event, 5
- is a deductible amount.
- (3) Where in consequence of –
- (a) the acquisition of the employment-related securities option,
  - (b) the acquisition of securities pursuant to the employment-related securities option, or 10
  - (c) a transaction of which the acquisition of the employment-related securities option or the acquisition of securities pursuant to the employment-related securities option forms part, 15
- there is a reduction in the market value of any employment-related securities to which an associated person is beneficially entitled, the amount of the reduction is to be treated for the purposes of subsection (2) as consideration (or additional consideration) given for the acquisition of the employment-related securities option. 20
- (4) If an amount counts as employment income of the employee under section 526 (approved CSOP schemes: charge where option granted at a discount) in respect of the employment-related securities option, so much of that amount as is attributable to the shares in question is a deductible amount. 25
- (5) The following are also deductible amounts –
- (a) any amount that constituted earnings from the employment under Chapter 1 of Part 3 (earnings) in respect of the acquisition of the employment-related securities option,
  - (b) any amount that was treated as earnings from the employment under Chapter 10 of that Part (taxable benefits: residual liability to charge) in respect of the acquisition of the employment-related securities option, and 30
  - (c) the amount of any gain by a previous holder on an assignment of the employment-related securities option which would have been a deductible cost by virtue of subsection (2)(c) of section 479 (as originally enacted) on an exercise of the option at a time when that section was in force. 35
- (6) If there has been a previous chargeable event in relation to the employment-related securities option (or if section 476 or 477 as originally enacted applied to the option by virtue of an earlier event), so much of any deductible amount as was deducted in calculating the taxable amount on the occasion of that event is to be regarded as not being a deductible amount. 40
- (7) Sections 481 and 482 (deductible amounts in respect of secondary Class 1 contributions or special contribution met by the employee) specify further deductible amounts. 45

**481 Deductible amount in respect of secondary Class 1 contributions met by employee**

- (1) The amount calculated under subsection (2) is a deductible amount if—
  - (a) an agreement having effect under paragraph 3A of Schedule 1 to the Contributions and Benefits Act has been entered into allowing the secondary contributor to recover from the employee the whole or part of any secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of the gain, or 5
  - (b) an election having effect under paragraph 3B of Schedule 1 to that Act is in force which has the effect of transferring to the employee the whole or part of the liability to pay secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of the gain. 10
- (2) The amount is the sum of—
  - (a) any amount that under the agreement referred to in subsection (1)(a) is recovered in respect of the gain by the secondary contributor before 5th June in the tax year following that in which the gain is realised, and 15
  - (b) the amount of any liability in respect of the gain that, by virtue of the election referred to in subsection (1)(b), has become the employee’s liability. 20
- (3) If notice of withdrawal of approval of the election is given, the amount of any liability in respect of the gain for the purposes of subsection (2)(b) is limited to the amount of the liability met before 5th June in the tax year following that in which the gain is realised. 25
- (4) Subsection (1) does not apply in respect of a liability to pay Class 1 contributions which is prevented from arising by virtue of section 2(1)(a) of the Social Security Contributions (Share Options) Act 2001 (liability to pay Class 1 contributions in respect of gains replaced by liability to pay special contribution). 30
- (5) In this section—
  - “approval”, in relation to an election, means approval by the Board of Inland Revenue under paragraph 3B of Schedule 1 to the Contributions and Benefits Act, and
  - “secondary contributor” has the same meaning as in that Act (see section 7). 35

**482 Deductible amount in respect of special contribution met by employee**

- (1) The amount of the liability referred to in subsection (4) is a deductible amount if conditions A to D are met.
- (2) Condition A is that a notice in respect the employment-related securities option was given to the Board of Inland Revenue in accordance with section 1 of the Social Security Contributions (Share Options) Act 2001 before 11th August 2001. 40
- (3) Condition B is that the person, or one of the persons, who gave that notice is a person who (apart from that Act) was liable, or would have become liable, by virtue of an election under paragraph 3B of Schedule 1 to the Contributions and Benefits Act, to pay secondary 45

Class 1 contributions in respect of an event which is a chargeable event for the purposes of section 476.

- (4) Condition C is that that person became liable to pay a special contribution under section 2 of the Social Security Contributions (Share Options) Act 2001 in respect of the employment-related securities option. 5
- (5) Condition D is that that person met that liability before 11th August 2001 or before the end of such further period as the Board of Inland Revenue directed under section 2(5) of that Act.

*Supplementary provisions* 10

**483 Application of this Chapter where option exchanged for another**

- (1) This section applies if –
- (a) the employment-related securities option (the “old option”) is assigned or released, and
  - (b) the whole or part of the consideration for the assignment or release consists of or includes another securities option (the “new option”). 15
- (2) For the purposes of section 479(5) (amount of gain realised by assigning or releasing option) the new option is not to be treated as consideration given for the assignment or release of the old option. 20
- (3) This Chapter applies to the new option as it applies to the old option.
- (4) For the purposes of section 480(2) (consideration for acquisition of option) the amount of the consideration given for the acquisition of the new option is to be treated as being the sum of –
- (a) the amount by which the amount of the consideration given for the acquisition of the old option exceeds the amount of any consideration given for the assignment or release of the old option, apart from the new option, and 25
  - (b) any valuable consideration given for the acquisition of the new option, apart from the old option. 30
- (5) Two or more transactions are to be treated for the purposes of subsection (1) as a single transaction by which one option is assigned for a consideration which consists of or includes another option if –
- (a) the transactions result in –
    - (i) a person ceasing to hold an option, and 35
    - (ii) that person or a connected person coming to hold another option, and
  - (b) one or more of the transactions is effected under arrangements to which two or more persons holding options, in respect of which there may be liability to tax under this Chapter, are parties. 40
- (6) Subsection (5) applies regardless of the order in which the assignments and the acquisition occur.

**484 Definitions**

- (1) In this Chapter –  
“securities”, and  
“securities option”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 420. 5
- (2) In this Chapter “market value” has the meaning indicated in section 421(1).
- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter sections 421(2) and 421A apply for determining the amount of consideration given for anything.
- (4) In this Chapter “employment-related securities” has the same meaning as in Chapter 1 of this Part (see section 421B(8)). 10
- (5) In this Chapter –  
“the acquisition”,  
“the employee”,  
“the employer”,  
“the employment”, and  
“employment-related securities option”,  
have the meaning indicated in section 471(5). 15
- (6) In this Chapter “associated person” has the meaning indicated in section 472. 20
- (7) In this Chapter –  
“secondary Class 1 contributions” has the same meaning as in the Contributions and Benefits Act (see section 1), and  
“the Contributions and Benefits Act” means SSCBA 1992 or SSCB(NI)A 1992.”. 25
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect –
- (a) on and after 16th April 2003 in relation to employment-related securities options which are not share options, and
- (b) on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2) in relation to employment-related securities options which are share options; 30
- and for this purpose “share options” means rights to acquire shares in a company or securities as defined in section 254(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 issued by a company.

*PAYE*

- 11 (1) Section 509 (modification of section 696 where charge on shares ceasing to be subject to plan) is amended as follows. 35
- (2) In subsection (4), for “subsection (5)” substitute “subsections (5) and (6)”.
- (3) After subsection (5) insert –
- “(6) In determining for the purposes of this section (and of section 696 in its application in accordance with this section) whether the shares are readily convertible assets, section 702 has effect with the omission of subsections (5A) to (5D).”.
- 12 (1) For sections 698 and 699 (PAYE: conditional interests in shares and 40

convertible shares) substitute –

**“698 PAYE: special charges on employment-related securities**

- (1) This section applies where by reason of the operation of –
- (a) section 426 (chargeable events in relation to restricted securities and restricted interests in securities), 5
  - (b) section 438 (chargeable events in relation to convertible securities and interests in convertible securities),
  - (c) section 446B (charge on acquisition where market value of securities or interest artificially depressed),
  - (d) section 446L (charge where market value of securities artificially enhanced), 10
  - (e) section 446U (securities or interest acquired for less than market value: charge on discharge of notional loan),
  - (f) section 446Y (charge where securities or interest disposed of for more than market value), or 15
  - (g) section 447 (chargeable benefit from securities or interest)
- in relation to employment-related securities, an amount counts as employment income of an employee.
- (2) Sections 684 to 691 and 696 have effect as if –
- (a) the employee were provided with PAYE income in the form of the employment-related securities by the employer on the relevant date, and 20
  - (b) the reference in subsection (2) of section 696 to the amount of income likely to be PAYE income in respect of the provision of the asset were to the amount likely to count as employment income. 25
- (3) In a case in which the employment-related securities are not readily convertible assets, if –
- (a) the amount counts as income by virtue of section 427(3)(c), 439(3)(b), (c) or (d), 446Y or 447, and 30
  - (b) the whole or any part of the consideration or benefit concerned takes the form of a payment or consists in the provision of an asset,
- subsection (4) applies.
- (4) Sections 684 to 691 and 696 have effect – 35
- (a) to the extent that the consideration or benefit takes the form of a payment, as if it were a payment of PAYE income of the employee by the employer, and
  - (b) to the extent that the consideration or benefit consists in the provision of an asset, as if the provision of the asset were the provision of PAYE income in the form of the asset by the employer on the relevant date. 40
- (5) Section 696 as applied by subsection (4)(b) has effect as if the reference in subsection (2) of that section to the amount of income likely to be PAYE income were to the same proportion of the amount likely to count as employment income as so much of the consideration or benefit as consists in the provision of the asset bears to the whole of the consideration or benefit. 45



- (6) In this section “the relevant date” means –
- (a) in relation to an amount counting as employment income under section 426 or 438, the date on which the chargeable event in question occurs,
  - (b) in relation to an amount counting as employment income under section 446B, the date of the acquisition of the securities or interest in securities in question, 5
  - (c) in relation to an amount counting as employment income under section 446L, the valuation date in question,
  - (d) in relation to an amount counting as employment income under section 446U, the date on which the notional loan in question is treated as discharged, 10
  - (e) in relation to an amount counting as employment income under section 446Y, the date of the disposal of the securities or interest in securities in question, and 15
  - (f) in relation to an amount counting as employment income under section 447, the date on which the benefit in question is received.
- (7) In this section “employment-related securities” has the same meaning as in Chapters 1 to 4 of Part 7.” 20
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2) but does not affect any securities, or interests in securities, acquired before 16th April 2003.
- 13 (1) For section 700 (PAYE: gains from share options) substitute –
- “700 PAYE: gains from securities options” 25**
- (1) This section applies where by reason of the operation of section 476 (acquisition of securities pursuant to securities option etc) in relation to an employment-related securities option an amount counts as employment income of an employee.
  - (2) In a case where the amount counts as employment income by virtue of section 477(3)(a) (acquisition of securities), sections 684 to 691 and 696 have effect as if – 30
    - (a) the employee were provided with PAYE income in the form of the securities by the employer on the relevant date, and
    - (b) the reference in subsection (2) of section 696 to the amount of income likely to be PAYE income in respect of the provision of the asset were to the amount likely to count as employment income. 35
  - (3) In a case where the amount counts as income by virtue of section 477(3)(b) or (c) (assignment or release for consideration or receipt of benefit), sections 684 to 691 and 696 have effect – 40
    - (a) to the extent that the consideration or benefit takes the form of a payment, as if it were a payment of PAYE income of the employee by the employer, and
    - (b) to the extent that the consideration or benefit consists in the provision of an asset, as if the provision of the asset were the provision of PAYE income in the form of the asset by the employer on the relevant date. 45

- (4) Section 696 as applied by subsection (3)(b) has effect as if the reference in subsection (2) of that section to the amount of income likely to be PAYE income were to the same proportion of the amount likely to count as employment income as so much of the consideration or benefit as consists in the provision of the asset bears to the whole of the consideration or benefit. 5
- (5) In this section “the relevant date” means the date on which the chargeable event in question occurs.
- (6) In this section –  
     “employment-related securities option”, and 10  
     “securities”,  
     have the same meaning as in Chapter 5 of Part 7.”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 14 (1) In section 701(2)(b) (“asset” not to include vouchers or credit-tokens), omit “subject to section 700(6),”. 15
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 15 (1) Section 702 (meaning of “readily convertible asset”) is amended as follows.
- (2) After subsection (5) insert – 20
- “(5A) An asset consisting in securities which is not a readily convertible asset apart from this subsection is to be treated as a readily convertible asset unless the securities are shares that are corporation tax deductible.
- (5B) For the purposes of subsection (5A) shares are corporation tax deductible if they are acquired by a person – 25
- (a) by reason of that, or another person’s, employment with a company, or
- (b) pursuant to an option granted by reason of that, or another person’s, employment with a company, 30
- and the company is entitled to corporation tax relief in respect of the shares under Schedule 23 to the Finance Act 2003 (corporation tax relief for employee share acquisition).
- (5C) If a person acquires additional shares by virtue of holding shares that are corporation tax deductible, the additional shares are to be treated for the purposes of subsection (5A) as if they were corporation tax deductible. 35
- (5D) If –
- (a) on a person ceasing to have a beneficial interest in shares that are corporation tax deductible, that person acquires other shares, and 40
- (b) the circumstances are such that the shares in which the person ceases to have a beneficial interest constitute “original shares” and the other shares constitute a “new holding” for the purposes of sections 127 to 130 of TCGA 1992, 45

the shares that constitute the new holding are to be treated for the purposes of subsection (5A) as if they were corporation tax deductible.”.

- (3) In subsection (6), after the definition of “money debt” insert –  
    ““securities” has the same meaning as in Chapters 1 to 5 of Part 7 (employment income from securities) (see section 420),  
    “shares” includes –  
        (a) an interest in shares, and  
        (b) stock or an interest in stock,”.
- (4) For the purposes of section 702, shares are to be treated as corporation tax deductible during an accounting period which began before 1st January 2003 if they would have been corporation tax deductible had the accounting period begun on or after that date.

*Consequential amendments*

- 16 (1) In section 3(1) (structure of employment income Parts), in the entry relating to Part 7, for “share-related income and exemptions” substitute “income and exemptions relating to securities and securities options acquired in connection with an employment”.  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after 16th April 2003.
- 17 (1) In section 7(6)(b) (employment income), for “(share-related income and exemptions)” substitute “(income and exemptions relating to securities and securities options)”.  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after 16th April 2003.
- 18 (1) In section 19(2) (year in which earnings treated as received), omit the entries relating to Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3.  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect –  
    (a) so far as relating to Chapter 8 of Part 3, in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of that Chapter, and  
    (b) so far as relating to Chapter 9 of Part 3, in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of that Chapter.
- 19 (1) In section 32(2) (receipt of non-money earnings), omit the entries relating to Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3.  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect –  
    (a) so far as relating to Chapter 8 of Part 3, in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of that Chapter, and  
    (b) so far as relating to Chapter 9 of Part 3, in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of that Chapter.
- 20 (1) In section 63(1) (the benefits code), omit the entries relating to Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3.  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect –  
    (a) so far as relating to Chapter 8 of Part 3, in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of that Chapter, and  
    (b) so far as relating to Chapter 9 of Part 3, in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of that Chapter.

- 21 (1) In section 64 (relationship between earnings and benefits code), omit subsections (5) and (6).  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of Chapter 8 of Part 3.
- 22 (1) Omit Chapter 8 of Part 3. 5  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to shares, and interests in shares, acquired on or after 16th April 2003.
- 23 (1) Omit Chapter 9 of Part 3.  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to shares, and interests in shares, disposed of on or after 16th April 2003. 10
- 24 (1) Section 216 (provisions not applicable to lower-paid employments) is amended as follows.  
(2) In subsection (4), omit the entries relating to Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3.  
(3) In subsection (6), omit the entries relating to section 195(3) and section 199(4). 15  
(4) Sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) have effect –  
(a) so far as relating to Chapter 8 of Part 3, in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of that Chapter, and  
(b) so far as relating to Chapter 9 of Part 3, in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of that Chapter. 20
- 25 (1) Section 227(4) (employment income: exemptions) is amended as follows.  
(2) For paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute –  
“ (a) section 425 (restricted securities: no charge in respect of acquisition in certain circumstances),  
(b) section 475 (no charge in respect of acquisition of securities option),” . 25  
(3) Omit paragraphs (d), (f) and (h).  
(4) This paragraph has effect –  
(a) so far as relating to section 425, in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 2 of Part 7, and 30  
(b) otherwise, in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 5 of Part 7.
- 26 (1) Omit section 491 (no charge under Chapter 8 of Part 3 in respect of acquisition of approved share incentive plan shares).  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of Chapter 8 of Part 3. 35
- 27 (1) Omit section 494 (no charge on removal of restrictions applying to approved share incentive plan shares).  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect –  
(a) so far as relating to section 427, in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 2 of Part 7, and 40  
(b) so far as relating to section 449, in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 4 of Part 7.
- 28 (1) Omit section 495 (approved share incentive plan shares: value of shares in dependent subsidiary). 45

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on 16th April 2003.
- 29 (1) Omit section 518 (no charge in respect of acquisition of approved SAYE share scheme option).  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 30 (1) In section 519 (no charge in respect of exercise of approved SAYE share scheme option), omit subsection (4). 5  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 31 (1) Omit section 520 (approved SAYE option schemes: no charge in respect of post-acquisition benefits).  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 4 of Part 7. 10
- 32 (1) Omit section 523 (no charge in respect of acquisition of approved CSOP scheme option).  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 33 (1) In section 524 (no charge in respect of exercise of approved CSOP scheme option), omit subsection (4). 15  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 34 (1) Omit section 525 (approved CSOP schemes: no charge in respect of post-acquisition benefits).  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 4 of Part 7. 20
- 35 (1) In section 526(4) (charge where approved CSOP scheme option granted at a discount: deductions of charge from amount chargeable under other provisions), for the words from the beginning to “deductions” substitute “Section 480(4) (gain realised on acquisition of securities pursuant to option etc) provides for a deduction”. 25  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect—  
(a) so far as relating to section 194, in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of Chapter 8 of Part 3, and  
(b) otherwise, on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2). 30
- 36 (1) Omit section 528 (enterprise management incentives: no charge in respect of acquisition of qualifying option).  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 37 (1) In section 531(4) (enterprise management incentives: limitation of charge on exercise of qualifying option to acquire shares below market value), for the words after “which” substitute “under section 478 (amount of charge under section 476) is to be regarded as the taxable amount for the purposes of section 476 in respect of the acquisition of the shares pursuant to the option.”. 35  
(2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2). 40
- 38 (1) In section 532(5) (enterprise management incentives: modified tax consequences following disqualifying events), for the words after “which” substitute “under section 478 (amount of charge under section 476) is to be regarded as the taxable amount for the purposes of section 476 in respect of the acquisition of the shares pursuant to the option.”. 45

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 39 (1) In section 538 (share conversions excluded for purposes of section 536), for subsection (4) substitute –
- “(4) In this section – 5
- “associated company” has the same meaning as, by virtue of section 416 of ICTA, it has for the purposes of Part 11 of ICTA,
- “director” has the same meaning as in the benefits code (see section 67) but also includes a person who is to be or has been a director, 10
- “employee” includes a person who is to be or has been an employee, and
- “employee-controlled” has the same meaning as in Chapters 1 to 4 of this Part (see section 421H(1)).”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2). 15
- 40 (1) In section 540(1) (enterprise management incentives: notional loan provisions not to apply in relation to acquisition of shares by exercise of qualifying option), for “Chapter 8 of Part 3” substitute “Chapter 3C of this Part”. 20
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the repeal of Chapter 8 of Part 3.
- 41 (1) In section 541 (enterprise management incentives: effect on other income tax charges), for sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) substitute –
- “(1) Nothing in the EMI code affects – 25
- (a) the operation of Chapters 2 to 4 of this Part in relation to shares acquired under a qualifying option, or
- (b) the operation of Chapter 5 of this Part otherwise than in relation to the acquisition of shares under a qualifying option. 30
- (2) But in calculating the taxable amount for the purposes of section 426 (post-acquisition charge on restricted securities) in respect of shares acquired under a qualifying option, the amount of relief on the exercise of the option is to be regarded as a deductible amount for the purposes of section 428 (amount of charge).”.
- (2) So far as relating to –
- (a) Chapter 9 of Part 3 (which is repealed and replaced by provisions inserted in Part 7),
- (b) any of the new Chapters substituted or inserted in Part 7 by this Schedule, and 40
- (c) each of the Chapters of that Part as originally enacted for which new Chapters are substituted by this Schedule,
- sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the taking effect of the repeal, substitution or insertion.
- 42 (1) Part 2 of Schedule 1 (index of defined expressions) is amended as follows. 45
- (2) Omit the entries relating to –
- “acquisition (in Chapter 8 of Part 3)”,

“the acquisition (in Chapter 8 of Part 3)”,	
“acquisition (in Chapter 9 of Part 3)”,	
“the acquisition (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	
“as a director or employee, in relation to the acquisition of an interest in shares (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,	5
“as a director or employee, in relation to the acquisition of shares or an interest in shares (in Chapter 3 of Part 7)”,	
“as a director or employee, in relation to the acquisition of shares or an interest in shares (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	
“assign, in relation to a share option (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,	10
“associated company (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	
“company (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,	
“the Contributions and Benefits Act (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,	
“convertible, in relation to shares (in Chapter 3 of Part 7)”,	
“dependent subsidiary (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	15
“director (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,	
“director (in Chapter 3 of Part 7)”,	
“director (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	
“director (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,	
“employee (in Chapter 8 of Part 3)”,	20
“employee (in Chapter 9 of Part 3)”,	
“employee (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,	
“the employee (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,	
“employee (in Chapter 3 of Part 7)”,	
“the employee (in Chapter 3 of Part 7)”,	25
“employee (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	
“the employee (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	
“employee (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,	
“the employee (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,	
“employee-controlled” (in relation to a company) (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	30
“the employee’s interest (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,	
“the employer company (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,	
“the employer company (in Chapter 3 of Part 7)”,	
“the employer company (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	35
“employment-related shares (in Chapter 9 of Part 3)”,	
“the employment-related shares (in Chapter 8 of Part 3)”,	
“held by outside shareholders (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	
“interest in shares (in Chapter 8 of Part 3)”,	
“interest in shares (in Chapter 9 of Part 3)”,	40
“interest in shares (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,	
“market value (in Chapter 8 of Part 3)”,	
“market value (in Chapter 9 of Part 3)”,	
“market value (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,	
“only conditional (interest in shares) (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,	45
“payment for the employment-related shares (in Chapter 8 of Part 3)”,	
“release, in relation to a share option (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,	

“secondary Class 1 contributions (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,		
“share option (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,		
“the share option (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,		
“shares (in Chapter 8 of Part 3)”,		
“shares (in Chapter 9 of Part 3)”,		5
“shares (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,		
“the shares (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,		
“shares (in Chapter 3 of Part 7)”,		
“the shares (in Chapter 3 of Part 7)”,		
“shares (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,		10
“the shares (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”,		
“shares (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)”,		
“terms (in Chapter 2 of Part 7)”,		
“terms (in Chapter 3 of Part 7)”, and		
“value (in relation to shares) (in Chapter 4 of Part 7)”. (3) At the appropriate places insert –		15
“the acquisition (in Chapters 1 to 4 of Part 7)	section 421B(8) (see also section 446Q(4))”,	
“the acquisition (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)	section 471(5)”,	
“associated company (in section 421H(1) and Chapters 2 to 4 of Part 7)	section 421H(2)”,	20
“associated person (in Chapters 1 to 4 of Part 7)	section 421C”,	
“associated person (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)	section 472”,	25
“chargeable event (in Chapter 3B of Part 7)	section 446P(5)”,	
“the Contributions and Benefits Act (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)	section 484(7)”,	
“consideration (in Chapters 2 to 5 of Part 7)	sections 421A”,	30
“consideration given for employment-related securities (in Chapters 2 to 3A of Part 7)	section 421I”,	
“convertible securities (in Chapters 2 to 3A of Part 7)	section 436”,	35
“the employee (in Chapters 1 to 4 of Part 7)	section 421B(8)”,	
“the employee (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)	section 471(5)”,	



“employee-controlled (in Chapters 2 to 4 of Part 7)	section 421H(1)”,	
“the employer (in Chapters 1 to 4 of Part 7)	section 421B(8)”,	
“the employment (in Chapters 1 to 4 of Part 7)	section 421B(8)”,	5
“the employment (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)	section 471(5)”,	
“employment-related securities (in Chapters 1 to 5 of Part 7)	section 421B(8) (see also section 484(4))”,	10
“employment-related securities option (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)	section 471(5)”,	
“interest, in relation to securities (or shares) (in Chapters 1 to 5 of Part 7)	section 420(8)”,	
“market value (in Chapters 1 to 5 of Part 7)	section 421(1)”,	15
“non-commercial increase (in Chapter 3B of Part 7)	section 446K(4)”,	
“non-commercial reduction (in Chapter 3B of Part 7)	section 446K(4)”,	20
“the notional loan (in Chapter 3C of Part 7)	section 446S(1)”,	
“recognised stock exchange	section 841 of ICTA”,	
“relevant period (in Chapter 3B of Part 7)	section 446O”,	25
“restricted securities and restricted interest in securities (in Chapters 2, 3A and 3B of Part 7)	sections 423 and 424”,	
“restriction (in Chapters 2, 3A and 3B of Part 7)	section 432(8)”,	30
“secondary Class 1 contributions (in Chapter 5 of Part 7)	section 484(7)”,	
“securities (in Chapters 1 to 5 of Part 7)	section 420”,	
“securities option (in Chapters 1 to 5 of Part 7)	section 420(8)”,	35
“shares (in Chapters 1 to 5 of Part 7)	section 420(8)”,	
“valuation date (in Chapter 3B of Part 7)	section 446O”,	

- “variation, in relation to a restriction (in section 427(4)).  
Chapter 2 of Part 7)
- (4) So far as relating to—
- (a) Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3 (which are repealed and replaced by provisions inserted in Part 7), 5
  - (b) each of the new Chapters substituted or inserted in Part 7, and
  - (c) each of the Chapters of that Part as originally enacted for which new provisions are substituted,
- sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) have effect in accordance with the provision made for the taking effect of the repeal, substitution or insertion. 10
- 43 (1) In paragraph 35 of Schedule 2 (approved share incentive plans: maximum annual award), for sub-paragraphs (3) and (4) substitute—
- “(3) For the purposes of this paragraph the market value of restricted shares is to be determined as if they were not.
  - (4) Shares are “restricted shares” if there is any contract, agreement, arrangement or condition which makes provision to which any of subsections (2) to (4) of section 423 would apply if the references in those subsections to the employment-related securities were to the shares.” 15
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 2 of Part 7. 20
- 44 (1) In paragraph 42(3) of Schedule 3 (approved SAYE option schemes: withdrawal of approval), for paragraph (b) substitute—
- “(b) section 421G(b) (exemption from Chapters 2 to 4 of Part 7),”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 4 of Part 7. 25
- 45 (1) Schedule 5 (enterprise management incentives) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 5, for sub-paragraphs (7) and (8) substitute—
- “(7) For the purposes of this paragraph the market value of restricted shares is to be determined as if they were not. 30
  - (8) Shares are “restricted shares” if there is any contract, agreement, arrangement or condition which makes provision to which any of subsections (2) to (4) of section 423 (restricted securities) would apply if the references in those subsections to the employment-related securities were to the shares.” 35
- (3) In paragraph 37, for sub-paragraphs (4) to (6) substitute—
- “(4) Where the shares that may be acquired by the employee are restricted shares, the agreement must contain details of the restrictions.
  - (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4)— 40
    - (a) shares are “restricted shares” if there is any contract, agreement, arrangement or condition which makes provision to which any of subsections (2) to (4) of section 423 (restricted securities) would apply if the references in those subsections to the employment-related securities were to the shares, and 45

- (b) “restrictions” means that provision.”.
- (4) Sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) have effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 2 of Part 7.
- 46 (1) Schedule 7 (transitionals and savings) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit paragraphs 30 and 31. 5
- (3) In the heading of Part 6, for “SHARE-RELATED” substitute “RELATED TO SECURITIES”.
- (4) In the heading of Part 7, for “SHARE-RELATED INCOME” substitute “INCOME RELATED TO SECURITIES”.
- (5) Before paragraph 44 insert – 10
- “Pre 6th April 2003 acquisitions*
- 43A (1) This paragraph relates to the operation of section 421E (exclusions from Chapters 2 to 4 of Part 7: residence) in relation to an acquisition made before 6th April 2003.
- (2) Section 421E(1) has effect with the substitution of “the employee was not chargeable under Case I of Schedule E in respect of the employment” for the words from “the earnings”. 15
- (3) Section 421E(2) has effect with the substitution of “the emoluments of the employment did not fall to be charged to income tax under Schedule E” for the words from “the earnings”.”. 20
- (6) In paragraph 44, after “Part 7” insert “, as originally enacted,”.
- (7) In paragraph 45(1), at end insert “, as originally enacted.”.
- (8) In paragraph 46(1), after “disposal)” insert “, as originally enacted,”.
- (9) Omit paragraphs 47 and 48.
- (10) In paragraph 49, for “shares” substitute “securities”. 25
- (11) Omit paragraphs 50 to 52.
- (12) Omit paragraph 53.
- (13) In paragraph 54, after “Part 7” insert “, both as originally enacted and as substituted by the Finance Act 2003,”.
- (14) In paragraph 55 – 30
- (a) after “Part 7” insert “, as originally enacted,”, and
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (2)(a).
- (15) In paragraph 56, after “section 449” insert “, as originally enacted,”.
- (16) In paragraph 58(1), at end insert “, as originally enacted.”
- (17) Omit paragraph 59. 35
- (18) Omit paragraphs 60 and 61.
- (19) After paragraph 61 insert –
- “Securities disposed of for more than market value*
- 61A Chapter 3D of Part 7 does not apply in relation to securities, or an interest in securities, acquired on or before 6th April 1976.”. 40

- (20) Omit paragraph 62.
- (21) For paragraph 63 substitute –
- “63 (1) This paragraph relates to the operation of section 474 (exclusions from Chapter 5 of Part 7: residence) in relation to an acquisition made before 6th April 2003. 5
- (2) Section 474(1) has effect with the substitution of “the employee was not chargeable under Case I of Schedule E in respect of the employment” for the words from “the earnings”.”.
- (22) In paragraph 64 –
- (a) for “share” (in both places) substitute “securities”, 10
- (b) for “obtained” substitute “acquired”, and
- (c) for “receipt” substitute “acquisition”.
- (23) In paragraph 65 –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), for “479 (amount of gain realised by exercising option) in relation to a share option obtained” substitute “478 in relation to an event that is a chargeable event by virtue of section 477(3)(a) or (b) (acquisition of securities pursuant to an option and assignment and release of option) in the case of a share option acquired”, and 15
- (b) in sub-paragraph (2), for “479(1)” substitute “478(1)” and for “cost” substitute “amount”. 20
- (24) Omit paragraph 66.
- (25) Omit paragraph 67.
- (26) In this paragraph –
- (a) sub-paragraphs (2) and (19) have effect in relation to securities, and interests in securities, disposed of on or after 16th April 2003, 25
- (b) sub-paragraphs (5) and (13) to (17) have effect on and after 16th April 2003,
- (c) sub-paragraphs (6) to (8), (10), (11), (20), (23) and (24) have effect on the day appointed under paragraph 3(2), and 30
- (d) sub-paragraphs (21) and (22) have effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 5 of Part 7.

*Consequential amendments of other enactments*

- 47 (1) In section 98 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (c. 9) (penalties for failure to furnish information etc) – 35
- (a) in the first column of the Table, after the entry relating to regulations under Schedule 33 to the Finance Act 2002 (c. 23) insert “Section 421J(4) of ITEPA 2003.”, and
- (b) in the second column of the Table, for the entries relating to sections 432, 433, 445, 465, 466 and 486 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) substitute “Section 421J(3) of ITEPA 2003.”. 40
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 1 of Part 7 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003.
- 48 (1) In section 4(4)(a) of – 45

- (a) the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 (c. 4) (payments treated as earnings), and
- (b) the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992 (c. 7) (corresponding provision for Northern Ireland),
- for the words after “479” substitute “of ITEPA 2003 in respect of which an amount counts as employment income of the earner under section 476 of that Act (charge on acquisition of securities pursuant to option etc), reduced by any amounts deducted under section 480(1) to (6) of that Act in arriving at the amount counting as such employment income;”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 5 of Part 7 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1).
- 49 The Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12) is amended as follows.
- 50 (1) After section 119 insert –
- “119A Increase in expenditure by reference to tax charged in relation to employment-related securities**
- (1) This section applies to a disposal of an asset consisting of employment-related securities if the disposal –
- (a) is an event giving rise to a relevant income tax charge, or
- (b) is the first disposal after an event, other than a disposal, giving rise to a relevant income tax charge.
- (2) Section 38(1)(a) applies as if the relevant amount had formed part of the consideration given by the person making the disposal for his acquisition of the employment-related securities.
- (3) For the purposes of this section an event gives rise to a relevant income tax charge if it results in an amount counting as employment income –
- (a) under section 426 of ITEPA 2003 (restricted securities),
- (b) under section 438 of ITEPA 2003 by virtue of section 439(3)(a) of that Act (conversion of convertible securities),
- (c) under section 446U of ITEPA 2003 (securities acquired for less than market value: discharge of notional loan), or
- (d) under section 476 of ITEPA 2003 by virtue of section 477(3)(a) of that Act (acquisition of securities pursuant to employment-related securities option),
- in respect of the employment-related securities.
- (4) For the purposes of this section “the relevant amount” is the aggregate of the amounts counting as employment income as mentioned in subsection (3) above by reason of events occurring –
- (a) not later than the disposal, and
- (b) where this section has applied to an earlier disposal of the employment-related securities, after the last disposal to which this section applied.
- (5) But where the relevant amount consists of or includes an amount counting as employment income under section 476 of ITEPA 2003, it is to be increased by the aggregate of any amounts deducted under

- section 480(5)(a) or (b), 481 or 482 of that Act in arriving at the amount of that employment income.
- (6) Where securities or interests in securities cease to be employment-related securities –
- (a) by reason of subsection (6) of section 421B of ITEPA in circumstances in which, immediately before the employee’s death, the employment-related securities are held otherwise than by the employee, or 5
- (b) by reason of subsection (7) of that section, they are to be regarded for the purposes of this section as remaining employment-related securities until the next occasion on which they are disposed of. 10
- (7) In this section –
- “employment-related securities”, and
- “employee”, in relation to employment-related securities, 15
- have the same meaning as in Chapters 1 to 4 of Part 7 of ITEPA 2003.
- (8) References in this section to ITEPA 2003 are to that Act as amended by Schedule 22 to the Finance Act 2003.”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to disposals on or after 16th April 2003. 20
- 51 In section 120 (increase in expenditure by reference to tax charged in relation to shares etc), after subsection (8) insert –
- “(9) References in this section to ITEPA 2003 are to that Act as originally enacted.”.
- 52 (1) After section 149A insert – 25
- “149AA Restricted and convertible employment-related securities**
- (1) Where an individual has acquired an asset consisting of employment-related securities which are –
- (a) restricted securities or a restricted interest in securities, or
- (b) convertible securities or an interest in convertible securities, 30
- the consideration for the acquisition shall (subject to section 119A) be taken to be equal to the aggregate of the actual amount or value given for the employment-related securities and any amount that constituted earnings under Chapter 1 of Part 3 of ITEPA 2003 (earnings) in respect of the acquisition. 35
- (2) Subsection (1) above applies only to the individual making the acquisition and, accordingly, is to be disregarded in calculating the consideration received by the person from whom the employment-related securities are acquired.
- (3) This section has effect in relation to acquisitions on or after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 22 to the Finance Act 2003. 40
- (4) In this section “employment-related securities” has the same meaning as in Chapters 1 to 4 of Part 7 of ITEPA 2003 (as substituted by Schedule 22 to the Finance Act 2003). 45

- (5) In this section –  
“restricted interest in securities”, and  
“restricted securities”,  
have the same meaning as in Chapter 2 of that Part of ITEPA 2003 (as so substituted). 5
- (6) In this section “convertible securities” has the same meaning as in Chapter 3 of that Part of ITEPA 2003 (as so substituted).”.
- 53 In section 149B (employee incentive schemes: conditional interests in shares), after subsection (4) insert –
- “(5) This section does not apply to acquisitions on or after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2) of Schedule 22 to the Finance Act 2003. 10
- (6) References in this section to ITEPA 2003 are to that Act as originally enacted.”.
- 54 (1) In section 288 (interpretation), after subsection (1) insert – 15
- “(1A) If any employment-related securities option would not otherwise be regarded as an option for the purposes of this Act, it shall be so regarded; and the acquisition of securities by an associated person pursuant to an employment-related securities option is to be treated for the purposes of this Act as the exercise of the option. 20
- Expressions used in this subsection and Chapter 5 of Part 7 of ITEPA 2003 have the same meaning in this subsection as in that Chapter.”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Chapter 5 of Part 7 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1). 25
- 55 (1) The Social Security Contributions (Share Options) Act 2001 (c. 20) is amended as follows.
- (2) The amendments of that Act have effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 56 In section 2(3)(b) (effect of notice under section 1), at end insert “(less any deductible amounts under section 480(1) to (6) of that Act).”.
- 57 (1) Section 3 (special provision for roll-overs) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (4) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “section 485(1) to (4)” substitute “section 483(1) to (4)”, and 35
- (b) insert at the end of paragraph (b)(i) “(less any deductible amounts under section 480(1) to (6) of that Act).”.
- (3) In subsection (6), for “485(1) to (3)” substitute “483(1) to (3)”.
- (4) In subsection (11)(a), insert at the end “(less any deductible amounts under section 480(1) to (6).”.
- 58 In section 5(2)(c) (interpretation), for “483(1)” substitute “477(6)”.
- 59 Schedule 23 to this Act (corporation tax relief for employee share acquisitions) is amended as follows.
- 60 (1) Paragraph 1 is amended as follows.

- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(b), for “in exercise of” substitute “pursuant to”.
- (3) For sub-paragraph (2) substitute –
- “(2) Part 4 of this Schedule makes further provision for cases where the shares acquired are restricted shares.
- (2A) Part 4A of this Schedule makes further provision for cases where the shares acquired are convertible shares.” 5
- (4) Sub-paragraph (2) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- (5) Sub-paragraph (3) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Part 4 of, and the insertion of Part 4A in, Schedule 23. 10
- 61 (1) For paragraph 5(2) substitute –
- “(2) Where the shares acquired are restricted shares, the provisions of this Part have effect subject to the provisions of Part 4 of this Schedule.
- (3) Where the shares acquired are convertible shares, the provisions of this Part have effect subject to the provisions of Part 4A of this Schedule.” 15
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Part 4 of, and the insertion of Part 4A in, Schedule 23.
- 62 (1) For paragraph 11(2) substitute – 20
- “(2) Where the shares acquired pursuant to the option are restricted shares, the provisions of this Part have effect subject to the provisions of Part 4 of this Schedule.
- (3) Where the shares acquired pursuant to the option are convertible shares, the provisions of this Part have effect subject to the provisions of Part 4A of this Schedule.” 25
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in accordance with the provision made for the substitution of Part 4 of, and the insertion of Part 4A in, Schedule 23.
- 63 (1) In paragraph 12, for “in exercise of” substitute “pursuant to”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2). 30
- 64 (1) Paragraph 13 is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (2)(b), for “in exercise of” (in both places) substitute “pursuant to”.
- (3) For sub-paragraph (2)(c) substitute – 35
- “(c) in determining the amount of relief –
- (i) any consideration given in respect of the grant of the new option is treated as if it had been given in respect of the grant of the old option, and
- (ii) any consideration given in respect of the acquisition of shares pursuant to the new option is treated as if it had been given in respect of the acquisition of shares pursuant to the old option.” 40
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3)(b), for “its exercise” substitute “the shares acquired pursuant to it”. 45



- (5) This paragraph has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 65 (1) For paragraph 14 substitute –
- “Income tax position of the employee*
- 14 (1) It must be the case that the acquisition of shares pursuant to the option – 5
- (a) is a chargeable event in relation to the employee for the purposes of section 476 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (whether or not an amount counts as employment income by virtue of that event), or 10
  - (b) would be such a chargeable event in relation to the employee if the conditions specified in sub-paragraph (2) were met.
- (2) The conditions mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b) are – 15
- (a) that the employee was resident and ordinarily resident in the United Kingdom at all material times, and
  - (b) that the duties of the employment by reason of which the option was granted were performed in the United Kingdom at all material times.”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2). 20
- 66 (1) Paragraph 15 is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) –
- (a) for “the option is exercised” substitute “they are acquired pursuant to the option”, and 25
  - (b) for “or exercise of” substitute “of the option or the acquisition of the shares pursuant to”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (3), for “or exercise of” substitute “of the option or the acquisition of the shares pursuant to”.
- (4) This paragraph has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2). 30
- 67 (1) In paragraph 17(1), for “in exercise of” substitute “pursuant to”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).
- 68 (1) For Part 4 substitute – 35

“PART 4

PROVISIONS APPLYING IN CASE OF RESTRICTED SHARES

*Introduction*

- 18 In the case of – 40
- (a) an award of restricted shares, or
  - (b) the acquisition pursuant to an option of restricted shares,

the provisions of Part 2 or 3 have effect subject to the provisions of this Part of this Schedule.

*Meaning of “restricted shares”*

- 19 Shares are “restricted shares” for the purposes of this Schedule if they are restricted securities, or a restricted interest in securities, for the purposes of Chapter 2 of Part 7 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (see sections 423 and 424 of that Act). 5

*Income tax position of employee in case of restricted shares*

- 20 (1) Where the recipient acquires restricted shares, this paragraph applies in place of paragraph 7 (income tax position of the employee). 10
- (2) It must be the case that the employee –
- (a) either –
- (i) is subject to a charge to income tax under Chapter 1 of Part 3 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 in respect of the award, or 15
- (ii) is not subject to such a charge but will be subject to a charge to income tax under the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 by virtue of section 426 of that Act on the occurrence of an event in relation to the shares that is a chargeable event for the purposes of that section, or 20
- (b) would be within paragraph (a) if the conditions specified in sub-paragraph (4) were met.
- (3) Where but for the death of the employee sub-paragraph (2)(a)(ii) would apply in relation to restricted shares acquired under an award of shares, it is to be treated as applying in relation to the restricted shares. 25
- (4) The conditions mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(b) are –
- (a) that the employee was resident and ordinarily resident in the United Kingdom at all material times, and 30
- (b) that the duties of the employment by reason of which the award was made or the option was granted were performed in the United Kingdom at all material times.

*Amount of relief in case of restricted shares* 35

- 21 (1) Where the recipient acquires restricted shares, this paragraph applies in place of paragraph 8 or 15 (amount of relief).
- (2) Relief is available –
- (a) on the award of the shares or, where they are acquired pursuant to an option, on that acquisition, 40
- (b) on any event that is a chargeable event in relation to the shares for the purposes of section 426 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003,
- (c) on the death of the employee.

- (3) The amount of the relief on the award of shares is equal to the amount that constitutes earnings from the employee's employment under Chapter 1 of Part 3 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 in respect of the award.
- (4) The amount of the relief on the acquisition of shares pursuant to the option is equal to the amount that counts as employment income of the employee under section 476 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 in respect of the acquisition, increased by any amounts deducted under sections 481 and 482 of that Act. 5
- (5) Where restricted shares acquired as mentioned in sub-paragraph (3) or (4) are also convertible shares, the total amount of the relief in respect of the acquisition is whichever is the greater of –
  - (a) in the case of an award of shares, the amounts mentioned in sub-paragraph (3) and paragraph 22C(3), and 15
  - (b) in the case of an acquisition of shares pursuant to an option, the amounts mentioned in sub-paragraph (4) and paragraph 22C(4).
- (6) The amount of the relief on an event that is a chargeable event for the purposes of section 426 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 is equal to the amount that counts as employment income of the employee under that section in respect of the chargeable event. 20
- (7) The amount of the relief on the death of the employee is equal to the amount that (disregarding section 428(3) and (7) of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003) would count as employment income of the employee if there were a chargeable event within section 427(3)(c) of that Act immediately before the restricted shares ceased to be employment-related securities by virtue of the employee's death. 25
- (8) Section 446E(3) of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 is to be disregarded in determining the amounts of the reliefs given by sub-paragraphs (6) and (7). 30
- (9) The amount of any non-commercial increase in the market value of the restricted shares since the time of the acquisition is to be disregarded for the purpose of determining the amounts of the reliefs given by sub-paragraphs (6) and (7). 35  
Non-commercial increase has the same meaning as in Chapter 3B of Part 7 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003.
- (10) If the award or grant was made partly for the purposes of a business meeting the requirements of paragraph 3 (business must be within the charge to corporation tax) and partly for the purposes of a business in relation to which those requirements are not met, the amount of the relief shall be reduced to such extent as is just and reasonable. 40
- (11) Where the employee –
  - (a) is not subject to a charge to income tax mentioned in sub-paragraph (3), (4) or (6), or would not be subject to the charge to income tax mentioned in sub-paragraph (7), but 45

(b) would be subject to such a charge if the conditions specified in paragraph 20(3) were met, the amount of the relief is to be taken to be the amount that would be the amount of the relief if those conditions were met.

*Timing of relief in case of restricted shares* 5

- 22 (1) Where the recipient acquires restricted shares, this paragraph applies in place of paragraph 10 or 17 (timing of relief).
- (2) The relief mentioned in paragraph 21(3) is given for the accounting period in which the recipient acquires the restricted shares pursuant to the award. 10
- (3) The relief mentioned in paragraph 21(4) is given for the accounting period in which the recipient acquires the restricted shares pursuant to the option.
- (4) The time when the shares are acquired is when the recipient acquires a beneficial interest in the shares and not, if different, the time the shares are conveyed or transferred. 15
- (5) The relief mentioned in paragraph 21(6) is given for the accounting period in which the chargeable event takes place.
- (6) The relief mentioned in paragraph 21(7) is given for the accounting period in which the employee dies.”. 20
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2) but does not affect any restricted shares acquired before 16th April 2003.
- 69 (1) After Part 4 insert –

“PART 4A 25

PROVISIONS APPLYING IN CASE OF CONVERTIBLE SHARES

*Introduction*

- 22A In the case of –
- (a) an award of convertible shares, or
- (b) the acquisition pursuant to an option of convertible shares, the provisions of Part 2 or 3 have effect subject to the provisions of this Part of this Schedule. 30

*Meaning of “convertible shares”*

- 22B (1) Shares are “convertible shares” for the purposes of this Schedule if they are convertible securities, or an interest in convertible securities. 35
- (2) But convertible securities which are not shares, or an interest in convertible securities which are not shares, are to be taken to be convertible shares for the purposes of this Schedule as it applies in relation to the reliefs given by paragraph 22C(6) and (7). 40

- (3) In this paragraph “convertible securities” has the same meaning as in Chapter 3 of Part 7 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (see section 436 of that Act).

*Amount of relief in case of convertible shares*

- 22C (1) Where the recipient acquires convertible shares, this paragraph applies in place of paragraph 8 or 15 (amount of relief). 5
- (2) Relief is available –
- (a) on the award of the shares or, where they are acquired pursuant to an option, on that acquisition,
  - (b) on any event that is a chargeable event in relation to the convertible shares, 10
  - (c) on the death of the employee.
- (3) The amount of the relief on the award of the shares is equal to the amount that constitutes earnings under Chapter 1 of Part 3 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (as modified by section 437 of that Act) in respect of the award. 15
- (4) The amount of the relief on the acquisition of the shares pursuant to an option is equal to the amount that counts as employment income of the employee under section 476 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (as modified by section 437 of that Act) in respect of the acquisition, increased by any amounts deducted under sections 481 and 482 of that Act. 20
- (5) Where convertible shares acquired as mentioned in sub-paragraph (3) or (4) are also restricted shares, the total amount of the relief in respect of the acquisition is whichever is the greater of – 25
- (a) in the case of an award of shares, the amounts mentioned in sub-paragraph (3) and paragraph 21(3), and
  - (b) in the case of an acquisition of shares pursuant to an option, the amounts mentioned in sub-paragraph (4) and paragraph 21(4). 30
- (6) The amount of the relief on an event that is a chargeable event in relation to the convertible shares is equal to the amount that counts as employment income of the employee in respect of that event. 35
- (7) The amount of the relief on the death of the employee is equal to the amount that would have counted as employment income of the employee in relation to the first event following the employee’s death which would have been a chargeable event were the employee still alive. 40
- (8) Sections 446G and 446H of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 are to be disregarded in determining the amounts of the reliefs given by sub-paragraphs (6) and (7).
- (9) If the award or grant was made partly for the purposes of a business meeting the requirements of paragraph 3 (business must be within the charge to corporation tax) and partly for the purposes of a business in relation to which those requirements are 45

not met, the amount of the relief shall be reduced to such extent as is just and reasonable.

- (10) Where the employee –
- (a) is not subject to a charge to income tax mentioned in sub-paragraph (3), (4) or (6), or would not be subject to the charge to income tax mentioned in sub-paragraph (7), but
  - (b) would be subject to such a charge if the conditions specified in paragraph 7(2) or 14(2) were met,
- the amount of the relief is to be taken to be the amount that would be the amount of the relief if those conditions were met.
- (11) In this paragraph and paragraph 22D “chargeable event” means an event that is a chargeable event in relation to the convertible shares within section 439(3)(a) of the Income Tax (Employment and Pensions) Act 2003; but a conversion of the convertible shares into anything other than shares which –
- (a) meet the requirements of paragraph 4, and
  - (b) would meet the requirements of paragraph 6 if they had been acquired by an award of shares,
- is not a chargeable event for the purposes of this paragraph.

*Timing of relief in case of convertible shares* 20

- 22D (1) Where the recipient acquires convertible shares, this paragraph applies in place of paragraph 10 or 17 (timing of relief).
- (2) The relief mentioned in paragraph 22C(3) is given for the accounting period in which the recipient acquires the convertible shares under the award. 25
  - (3) The relief mentioned in paragraph 22C(4) is given for the accounting period in which the recipient acquires the convertible shares pursuant to the option.
  - (4) The time when shares are acquired is when the recipient acquires a beneficial interest in the shares and not, if different, the time the shares are conveyed or transferred. 30
  - (5) The relief mentioned in paragraph 22C(6) is given for the accounting period in which the chargeable event takes place.
  - (6) The relief mentioned in paragraph 22C(7) is given for the accounting period in which the event takes place which would have been a chargeable event but for the death of the employee.”. 35
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2) (so that, apart from paragraph 22C(2)(a) and (3) to (5) and paragraph 22D(2) to (4), the provisions of Part 4A of Schedule 23 as inserted by that sub-paragraph apply on and after that day in relation to convertible shares irrespective of the time of the acquisition). 40
- 70 (1) In paragraph 23(2)(a), for “or 22” substitute “22 or 22D”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under paragraph 3(2).

- 71 (1) In paragraph 26 before paragraph (a) insert –  
    “(za) “employment” includes a former or prospective  
        employment,”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after 16th April 2003.
- 72 (1) For paragraph 27 substitute – 5  
*“Acquisition of shares pursuant to option after death of employee or recipient*
- 27 (1) Where after the employee’s death shares are acquired by the  
    recipient pursuant to an option obtained by reason of the  
    employee’s employment, the condition in paragraph 14 (income  
    tax position of the employee) is treated as met if it would be met 10  
    were the employee still alive.
- (2) Where after the death of the recipient shares are acquired  
    pursuant to an option obtained by reason of the employee’s  
    employment, paragraph 1(1)(b) and Parts 3, 4 and 4A of this  
    Schedule, and sub-paragraph (1) above, apply as if the recipient 15  
    were still alive and the shares were acquired by him.”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect on and after the day appointed under  
    paragraph 3(2).
- 73 (1) Paragraph 31 is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit the entry relating to “subject to forfeiture”. 20
- (3) At the appropriate places insert –
- “restricted shares paragraph 20”,
- “convertible shares paragraph 23B”.
- (4) This paragraph has effect in accordance with the provision made for the  
    substitution of Part 4 of, and the insertion of Part 4A in, Schedule 23. 25

SCHEDULE 23

Section 140

CORPORATION TAX RELIEF FOR EMPLOYEE SHARE ACQUISITION

PART 1

GENERAL PROVISIONS

- Introduction* 30
- 1 (1) This Schedule provides for corporation tax relief for a company where a  
    person –
- (a) acquires shares by reason of his, or another person’s, employment  
    with that company (an “award of shares”: see Part 2 of this Schedule),  
    or 35

- (b) obtains by reason of his, or another person's, employment with that company an option to acquire shares and acquires shares in exercise of that option (the "grant of an option": see Part 3 of this Schedule).
- (2) Part 4 of this Schedule makes further provision for cases where the shares acquired are subject to forfeiture. 5
- (3) In this Schedule –
- "the employing company" means the company mentioned in subparagraph (1);
- "the recipient" means the person acquiring the shares or obtaining the option; and 10
- "the employee" means the person by reason of whose employment the shares are acquired or the option is granted.

*Requirements for relief*

- 2 Relief under this Schedule is available only if the requirements of this Schedule are met as to – 15
- (a) the business for the purposes of which the award or grant is made (paragraph 3);
- (b) the kind of shares acquired (paragraph 4);
- (c) the company whose shares are acquired (paragraph 6 or 12); and
- (d) the income tax position of the employee (paragraph 7, 14 or 20). 20

*Business must be within the charge to corporation tax*

- 3 (1) The business for the purposes of which the award or grant is made must –
- (a) be carried on by the employing company, and
- (b) be within the charge to corporation tax.
- (2) A business is within the charge to corporation tax if, or to the extent that, it is carried on by a company that is within the charge to corporation tax in respect of the profits of the business. 25

*Kind of shares acquired*

- 4 (1) The shares acquired must meet the following requirements.
- (2) They must be ordinary shares that are fully paid-up and not redeemable. 30
- (3) They must be –
- (a) shares of a class listed on a recognised stock exchange, or
- (b) shares in a company that is not under the control of another company, or
- (c) shares in a company that is under the control of a company (other than a close company or a company that if resident in the United Kingdom would be a close company) whose shares are listed on a recognised stock exchange. 35



PART 2

AWARD OF SHARES

*Introduction*

- 5 (1) The provisions of this Part of this Schedule apply in the case of an award of shares. 5
- (2) Where the shares acquired are subject to forfeiture, the provisions of this Part have effect subject to the provisions of Part 4 of this Schedule.

*The company whose shares are acquired*

- 6 (1) The shares acquired must be shares in – 10
- (a) the employing company; or
  - (b) a company that, at the time of the award, is a parent company in relation to the employing company; or
  - (c) a company that, at the time of the award, is a member of a consortium that owns the employing company or a company within paragraph (b); or 15
  - (d) where at the time of the award the employing company or a company within paragraph (b) is a member of a consortium that owns another company (C), a company that at that time – 20
    - (i) is a member of the consortium or a parent company in relation to a member of the consortium, and
    - (ii) is also a member of the same commercial association of companies as C.

*Income tax position of employee*

- 7 (1) It must be the case that the employee – 25
- (a) is subject to a charge to income tax under the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) in respect of the award, or
  - (b) would be subject to such a charge if the conditions specified in sub-paragraph (2) were met.
- (2) The conditions mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b) are – 30
- (a) that the employee was resident and ordinarily resident in the United Kingdom at all material times, and
  - (b) that the duties of the employment by reason of which the award was made were performed in the United Kingdom at all material times.

*Amount of relief*

- 8 (1) The amount of the relief is equal to the difference between – 35
- (a) the market value of the shares at the time of the award, and
  - (b) the total amount or value of any consideration given, by the recipient or another, in respect of the shares.
- (2) The consideration mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b) does not include the performance of any duties of, or in connection with, the employee's employment with the employing company. 40

- (3) A just and reasonable apportionment shall be made for the purposes of this paragraph of any consideration given partly in respect of the shares and partly in respect of other matters.
- (4) If the award was made partly for the purposes of a business meeting the requirements of paragraph 3 (business must be within the charge to corporation tax) and partly for the purposes of a business in relation to which those requirements are not met, the amount of the relief shall be reduced to such extent as is just and reasonable. 5

*How relief is given*

- 9 (1) The amount of the relief is allowed as a deduction in computing for the purposes of corporation tax the profits of the business for the purposes of which the award was made. 10
- (2) If the company carrying on that business is an investment company, the amount of the relief is treated as disbursed as expenses of management for the purposes of section 75 of the Taxes Act 1988. 15
- (3) If the company carrying on that business is an insurance company carrying on life assurance business, the amount of the relief is included among the amounts the company may treat as part of its expenses of management for the purposes of section 76 of the Taxes Act 1988.
- (4) If the award was made for the purposes of more than one business within the charge to corporation tax, the amount of the deduction must be apportioned between them on a just and reasonable basis. 20

*Timing of relief*

- 10 (1) The relief is given for the accounting period in which the recipient acquires the shares. 25
- (2) The time when the shares are acquired is when the recipient acquires a beneficial interest in the shares and not, if different, the time the shares are conveyed or transferred.

PART 3

GRANT OF OPTION 30

*Introduction*

- 11 (1) The provisions of this Part of this Schedule apply in the case of the grant of an option to acquire shares.
- (2) Where the shares acquired in exercise of the option are subject to forfeiture, the provisions of this Part have effect subject to the provisions of Part 4 of this Schedule. 35

*The company whose shares are acquired*

- 12 The company whose shares are acquired in exercise of the option must be –
- (a) the employing company; or
- (b) a company that, at the time the option is granted, is a parent company in relation to the employing company; or 40

- (c) a company that, at that time, is a member of a consortium that owns the employing company or a company within paragraph (b); or
- (d) where, at that time, the employing company or a company within paragraph (b) is a member of a consortium that owns another company (C), a company that, at that time –
  - (i) is a member of the consortium or a parent company in relation to a member of the consortium, and
  - (ii) is also a member of the same commercial association of companies as C; or
- (e) a qualifying successor company (see paragraph 13).

*Takeover of company whose shares are subject of option*

- 13 (1) This paragraph applies where –
- (a) there is a takeover of a company whose shares are the subject of a qualifying option,
  - (b) the holder of the option, by agreement with the acquiring company, releases his rights under that option (“the old option”) in consideration of the grant to him of another option (“the new option”), and
  - (c) the new option relates to shares in a qualifying company.
- (2) Where those conditions are met –
- (a) the company whose shares are the subject of the new option is a qualifying successor company for the purposes of paragraph 12 (requirement as to company whose shares are acquired),
  - (b) shares acquired in exercise of the new option are treated for the purposes of this Schedule as if they had been acquired in exercise of the old option, and
  - (c) in determining the amount of relief any consideration given in respect of the grant or exercise of the new option is treated as if it had been given in respect of the grant or exercise of the old option.
- (3) For the purposes of this paragraph –
- (a) there is a takeover of a company where another company (“the acquiring company”) acquires control of it; and
  - (b) an option is a “qualifying option” if the requirements of paragraph 12 would be met in relation to its exercise.
- (4) The following are qualifying companies for the purposes of this paragraph –
- (a) the acquiring company;
  - (b) a company that, at the time of the takeover, is a parent company in relation to the acquiring company;
  - (c) a company that, at that time, is a member of a consortium that owns the acquiring company or a company within paragraph (b);
  - (d) where, at that time, the acquiring company or a company within paragraph (b) is a member of a consortium that owns another company (C), a company that, at that time –
    - (i) is a member of the consortium or a parent company in relation to a member of the consortium, and
    - (ii) is also a member of the same commercial association of companies as C.

---

*Income tax position of the employee*

- 14 (1) It must be the case that the employee –
- (a) either –
    - (i) was subject to a charge to income tax under the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) in respect of the grant of the option, or 5
    - (ii) is subject to a charge to income tax under that Act by virtue of section 476 or 477 of that Act in respect of the gain realised by the exercise of the option, or
  - (b) would be subject to such a charge as is mentioned in paragraph (a)(ii) but for a relevant exemption, or 10
  - (c) would be within paragraph (a) or (b) if the conditions specified in sub-paragraph (3) were met.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(b) a “relevant exemption” means an exemption under – 15
- (a) section 519, 520, 524 or 525 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (exercise of option under approved SAYE scheme or approved CSOP scheme), or
  - (b) section 530 of that Act (exercise of qualifying option under EMI code). 20
- (3) The conditions mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(c) are –
- (a) that the employee was resident and ordinarily resident in the United Kingdom at all material times, and
  - (b) that the duties of the employment by reason of which the option was granted were performed in the United Kingdom at all material times. 25

*Amount of relief*

- 15 (1) The amount of the relief is equal to the difference between –
- (a) the market value of the shares at the time the option is exercised, and
  - (b) the total amount or value of any consideration given, by the recipient or another, in respect of the grant or exercise of the option. 30
- (2) The consideration mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b) does not include –
- (a) the performance of any duties of, or in connection with, the employee’s employment with the employing company, or
  - (b) any amount paid or payable by the employee in pursuance of –
    - (i) an agreement within paragraph 3A(2) of Schedule 1 to the Contributions and Benefits Act (agreement for recovery from earner of secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of share option gain), or 35
    - (ii) an election under paragraph 3B of that Schedule (election transferring to earner liability for secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of share option gain). 40
- (3) A just and reasonable apportionment shall be made for the purposes of this paragraph of any consideration given partly in respect of the grant or exercise of the option and partly in respect of other matters.
- (4) If the option was granted partly for the purposes of a business meeting the requirements of paragraph 3 (business must be within the charge to corporation tax) and partly for the purposes of a business in relation to 45

which those requirements are not met, the amount of the relief shall be reduced to such extent as is just and reasonable.

*How relief is given*

- 16 (1) The amount of the relief is allowed as a deduction in computing for the purposes of corporation tax the profits of the business for the purposes of which the option was granted. 5
- (2) If the company carrying on the business is an investment company, the amount of the relief is treated as disbursed as expenses of management for the purposes of section 75 of the Taxes Act 1988.
- (3) If the company carrying on the business is an insurance company carrying on life assurance business, the amount of the relief is included among the amounts the company may treat as part of its expenses of management for the purposes of section 76 of the Taxes Act 1988. 10
- (4) If the option was granted for the purposes of more than one business within the charge to corporation tax, the amount of the deduction must be apportioned between them on a just and reasonable basis. 15

*Timing of relief*

- 17 (1) The relief is given for the accounting period in which the shares are acquired in exercise of the option.
- (2) The time when the shares are acquired is when the recipient acquires a beneficial interest in the shares and not, if different, the time the shares are conveyed or transferred. 20

PART 4

PROVISIONS APPLYING IN CASE OF SHARES SUBJECT TO FORFEITURE

*Introduction* 25

- 18 In the case of—
- (a) an award of shares that are subject to forfeiture, or
- (b) the acquisition in exercise of an option of shares that are subject to forfeiture,
- the provisions of Part 2 or 3 have effect subject to the provisions of this Part of this Schedule. 30

*Meaning of shares being “subject to forfeiture”*

- 19 (1) This paragraph explains what is meant in this Schedule by shares being “subject to forfeiture”.
- (2) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, shares are “subject to forfeiture” for so long as the terms on which the recipient is entitled to them—
- (a) provide that if certain circumstances arise, or do not arise, there will be a transfer, reversion or forfeiture as a result of which the recipient will cease to be entitled to any beneficial interest in the shares, and 40

- (b) are not such that, in that event, he will be entitled to receive an amount that is equal to or more than the market value of the shares at that time.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2) –
- (a) the reference to circumstances arising includes – 5
- (i) the expiry of a period specified in, or determined under, the terms on which the recipient is entitled to the shares,
- (ii) the exercise by any person of a power conferred on him by or under those terms, or
- (iii) the death of any person; and 10
- (b) the reference to the market value of the shares is to the market value determined as if there were no provision for transfer, reversion or forfeiture.
- (4) Shares are not “subject to forfeiture” –
- (a) because they are unpaid or partly paid and may be forfeited for non-payment of calls, provided there is no restriction on the meeting of calls by the recipient, or 15
- (b) because the articles of association of the company require the shares to be offered for sale or transferred if the employee ceases to hold specified employment, or 20
- (c) because the recipient may be required to offer the shares for sale or transfer them on the employee ceasing, as a result of misconduct, to hold specified employment.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4) –
- (a) “articles of association” includes, in the case of a company incorporated under the law of a country outside the United Kingdom, any equivalent document; 25
- (b) the references to the employee ceasing to hold specified employment are to his ceasing –
- (i) to be an employee of the employing company, or 30
- (ii) to be an employee of one or more group companies, or
- (iii) to be an employee of any group company,  
as specified by the terms on which he is entitled to the shares.
- (6) References in this section to the terms on which the recipient is entitled to shares include terms imposed by any contract or arrangement or in any other way. 35

*Income tax position of the employee in case of shares subject to forfeiture*

- 20 (1) Where the recipient acquires shares that are subject to forfeiture, this paragraph applies in place of paragraph 7 or 14 (income tax position of the employee). 40
- (2) It must be the case that the employee –
- (a) is subject to a charge to income tax under the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) by virtue of section 427 of that Act –
- (i) on the shares ceasing to be subject to forfeiture, or
- (ii) on the recipient disposing of the shares, or dying, without the shares having ceased to be subject to forfeiture, or 45

- (b) would be subject to such a charge if the conditions in sub-paragraph (3) were met.
- (3) The conditions mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(b) are –
  - (a) that the employee was resident and ordinarily resident in the United Kingdom at all material times, and 5
  - (b) that the duties of the employment by reason of which the award was made or the option was granted were performed in the United Kingdom at all material times.

*Amount of relief in case of shares subject to forfeiture*

- 21 (1) Where the recipient acquires shares that are subject to forfeiture, this paragraph applies in place of paragraph 8 or 15 (amount of relief). 10
- (2) The amount of the relief is equal to the difference between –
  - (a) the market value of the shares at the relevant time, and
  - (b) the total amount or value of any consideration given, by the recipient or another – 15
    - (i) in respect of the shares or, as the case may be, in respect of the grant or exercise of the option, or
    - (ii) in respect of the shares ceasing to be subject to forfeiture.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(a) –
  - (a) the “relevant time” is the time at which the shares cease to be subject to forfeiture or, where the recipient disposes of the shares, or dies, without the shares having ceased to be subject to forfeiture, the time of the disposal or death; and 20
  - (b) the market value of the shares at that time is their market value immediately after they cease to be subject to forfeiture or, where the recipient disposes of the shares, or dies, without the shares having ceased to be subject to forfeiture, at the time of the disposal or death. 25
- (4) The consideration mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(b) does not include –
  - (a) the performance of any duties of, or in connection with, the employee’s employment with the employing company, or 30
  - (b) any amount paid or payable by the employee in pursuance of –
    - (i) an agreement within paragraph 3A(2) of Schedule 1 to the Contributions and Benefits Act (agreement for recovery from earner of secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of share option gain), or 35
    - (ii) an election under paragraph 3B of that Schedule (election transferring to earner liability for secondary Class 1 contributions in respect of share option gain).
- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph a just and reasonable apportionment shall be made of any consideration given partly in respect of the matters mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(b) and partly in respect of other matters. 40
- (6) If the award or grant was made partly for the purposes of a business meeting the requirements of paragraph 3 (business must be within the charge to corporation tax) and partly for the purposes of a business in relation to which those requirements are not met, the amount of the relief shall be reduced to such extent as is just and reasonable. 45

*Timing of relief in case of shares subject to forfeiture*

- 22 (1) Where the recipient acquires shares that are subject to forfeiture, this paragraph applies in place of paragraph 10 or 17 (timing of relief).
- (2) The relief is given for the accounting period in which –
- (a) the shares cease to be subject to forfeiture, or 5
  - (b) the recipient disposes of the shares, or dies, without the shares having ceased to be subject to forfeiture.

## PART 5

## SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

*Transfer of business within a group* 10

- 23 (1) This paragraph applies where –
- (a) between the time when an award of shares, or the grant of an option to acquire shares, is made and the time of the relief-triggering event for those shares, there is a transfer of the whole, or substantially the whole, of the business for the purposes of which the award or grant was made (“the relevant business”), 15
  - (b) the transfer, or each of them if there is more than one, is a qualifying transfer, and
  - (c) as a result of the transfer or transfers, the whole or substantially the whole of the relevant business is carried on at the time of the relief-triggering event by a different company (“the successor company”) or by different companies (“the successor companies”) from the one by which it was carried on at the time of the award or grant. 20
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) –
- (a) the “relief-triggering event” for shares is the event that, in accordance with paragraph 10, 17 or 22, determines the accounting period for which relief under this Schedule is given in respect of them; 25
  - (b) there is a “qualifying transfer” of a business (or a part of one) where the business (or part) is transferred from one company to another company that is, or to two or more companies that are, members of the same group. 30
- (3) Where this paragraph applies –
- (a) relief under this Schedule in respect of the shares is given to the successor company or, as the case may be, to whichever one of the successor companies is jointly nominated by them, and 35
  - (b) the reference in paragraph 1(1)(a) or (b) to “that company” shall be read as a reference to the company by which the relevant business was carried on at the time of the award or grant.

*Relationship between relief and other deductions: priority of deductions under SIP code*

- 24 (1) Deductions available under any of the following provisions of Schedule 4AA to the Taxes Act 1988 (share incentive plans) are to be given in priority to relief under this Schedule – 40
- (a) paragraph 2 (deduction for providing free or matching shares);



- (b) paragraph 3 (deduction for expenses in providing partnership shares);
  - (c) paragraph 9 or 10(3) (deduction for contribution to plan trust).
- (2) No relief is available under this Schedule in respect of shares in relation to which a deduction is allowable, or has been made, under any of those provisions. 5

*Relationship between relief and other deductions: exclusion of other deductions*

- 25 (1) Where relief under this Schedule is available for any accounting period, no other deduction is allowed for any corporation tax purposes (whether for that or any other period) in respect of the cost of providing the shares. 10  
This applies to any deduction, whether by the employing company or any other company, in computing chargeable profits for the purposes of corporation tax.
- (2) For this purpose the cost of providing the shares –
- (a) means expenses directly related to the provision of the shares, and 15
  - (b) includes, in a case where the shares are acquired under an employee share scheme, any amount paid or payable by the employing company in respect of the participation of the employee in that scheme.
- (3) The following are not regarded as part of the cost of providing the shares – 20
- (a) expenses incurred in establishing the employee share scheme under which the recipient acquires the shares;
  - (b) expenses incurred in meeting, or contributing to, the costs of administering the scheme;
  - (c) the costs of borrowing for the purposes of the scheme; 25
  - (d) fees, commission, stamp duty and similar incidental expenses of acquiring the shares.
- (4) In this paragraph “employee share scheme” means any scheme or arrangement for enabling shares to be acquired by reason of employees’ employment. 30

*Meaning of “employment”*

- 26 For the purposes of this Schedule –
- (a) references to employment by a company include holding an office with that company, and related expressions have a corresponding meaning, and 35
  - (b) members of a company whose affairs are managed by the members themselves are treated as holding an office with the company.

*Exercise of option after death of employee or recipient*

- 27 (1) Where an option to acquire shares obtained by reason of the employee’s employment is exercised by the recipient after the employee’s death, the condition in paragraph 14 (income tax position of the employee) is treated as met if it would be met were the employee still alive. 40
- (2) Where an option to acquire shares obtained by reason of the employee’s employment is exercised after the death of the recipient, paragraph 1(1)(b)

and Part 3 of this Schedule, and sub-paragraph (1) above, apply as if the recipient were still alive and the option were exercised by him.

*Meaning of “group company” and “parent company”*

- 28 For the purposes of this Schedule –
- (a) a company is a “group company”, in relation to another company, if they are members of the same group, 5
  - (b) two companies are members of the same group if, and only if, one is a 51% subsidiary of the other or both are 51% subsidiaries of a third company, and
  - (c) a company is a “parent company” in relation to another company if that other is its 51% subsidiary. 10

*Meaning of “consortium” and “commercial association of companies”*

- 29 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule a company is a member of a consortium owning another company if it is one of five or fewer companies –
- (a) that between them beneficially own not less than 75% of the other company’s ordinary share capital, and 15
  - (b) each of which beneficially owns not less than 10% of that capital.
- For this purpose the shareholdings of members of a group of companies shall be treated as held by a single company.
- (2) In this Schedule a “commercial association of companies” means a company together with such of its associated companies as carry on businesses that are of such a nature that the businesses of the company and the associated companies, taken together, may be reasonably considered to make up a single composite undertaking. 20
- “Associated company” here has the meaning given by section 416 of the Taxes Act 1988. 25

*Minor definitions*

- 30 In this Schedule –
- “the Contributions and Benefits Act” means –
    - (a) the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 (c. 4), 30
    - or
    - (b) the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992 (c. 7);
  - “control” has the meaning given by section 840 of the Taxes Act 1988;
  - “insurance company” and “life assurance business” have the meanings given by section 431(2) of that Act; 35
  - “investment company” has the meaning given by section 130 of that Act;
  - “market value” has the same meaning as in the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12) (see sections 272 and 273 of that Act); 40
  - “option” includes any right to acquire shares;
  - “ordinary shares”, in relation to a company, means shares forming part of the company’s ordinary share capital;
  - “shares” includes –
    - (a) an interest in shares, and 45

(b) stock or an interest in stock.

*Index of defined expressions*

31	In this Schedule the following expressions are defined or otherwise explained by the provisions indicated:		
	commercial association of companies	paragraph 29(2)	5
	consortium	paragraph 29(1)	
	Contributions and Benefits Act	paragraph 30	
	control	paragraph 30	
	employment and related expressions	paragraph 26	
	the employee	paragraph 1(3)	10
	employing company	paragraph 1(3)	
	group	paragraph 28(b)	
	group company	paragraph 28(a)	
	insurance company	paragraph 30	
	investment company	paragraph 30	15
	life assurance business	paragraph 30	
	market value	paragraph 30	
	option	paragraph 30	
	ordinary shares	paragraph 30	
	parent company	paragraph 28(c)	20
	the recipient	paragraph 1(3)	
	shares	paragraph 30	
	subject to forfeiture	paragraph 19	
	within the charge to corporation tax (of a business)	paragraph 3(2)	

PART 6 25

COMMENCEMENT AND TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

*Commencement*

32 This Schedule applies to accounting periods of the employing company beginning on or after 1st January 2003.

*Transitional provisions*

- 33 (1) Relief is not available under this Schedule in respect of shares to the extent that a deduction is available or has been made in respect of relevant expenses in computing the chargeable profits of the employing company or any other company for the purposes of corporation tax for an accounting period beginning before 1st January 2003. 5
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “relevant expenses” means any expenses referable, directly or indirectly, to the provision of the shares in question.
- (3) In relation to any time before the coming into force of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) (“ITEPA”), this Schedule has effect as if – 10
- (a) the references to a charge to income tax under ITEPA were to a charge to income tax under section 19 of the Taxes Act 1988;
  - (b) the reference in paragraph 14(1)(a)(ii) to section 476 or 477 of ITEPA were to section 135 of the Taxes Act 1988; 15
  - (c) the reference in paragraph 14(2)(a) to section 519, 520, 524 or 525 of ITEPA were to section 185(3)(a) of the Taxes Act 1988;
  - (d) the reference in paragraph 14(2)(b) to section 530 of ITEPA were to paragraph 44 of Schedule 14 to the Finance Act 2000 (c. 17);
  - (e) the reference in paragraph 20(2)(a) to section 427 of ITEPA were to section 140A of the Taxes Act 1988; 20
  - (f) the references in paragraph 24(1) to paragraphs 2, 3, 9 and 10(3) of Schedule 4AA to the Taxes Act 1988 were to paragraphs 106, 107, 112A and 112B(3) respectively of Schedule 8 to the Finance Act 2000.

SCHEDULE 24

Section 142 25

RESTRICTION OF DEDUCTIONS FOR EMPLOYEE BENEFIT CONTRIBUTIONS

*Restriction of deductions*

- 1 (1) This Schedule applies where –
- (a) a calculation is required to be made for tax purposes of a person’s profits for any period, and 30
  - (b) a deduction would (but for this Schedule) be allowed for that period in respect of employee benefit contributions made, or to be made, by that person (“the employer”).
- But it does not apply to a deduction of a kind mentioned in paragraph 8.
- (2) For the purposes of this Schedule an employer makes an “employee benefit contribution” if – 35
- (a) he pays money or transfers an asset to another person (“the third party”), and
  - (b) the third party is entitled or required, under the terms of an employee benefit scheme, to hold or use the money or asset for or in connection with the provision of benefits to employees of the employer. 40
- (3) The deduction in respect of employee benefit contributions mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) is allowed only to the extent that –

- (a) during the period in question or within nine months from the end of it –
    - (i) qualifying benefits are provided out of the contributions, or
    - (ii) qualifying expenses are paid out of the contributions,or 5
  - (b) where the making of the contributions is itself the provision of qualifying benefits, the contributions are made during that period or within those nine months.
- (4) An amount disallowed under sub-paragraph (3) is allowed as a deduction for a subsequent period to the extent that – 10
- (a) qualifying benefits are provided out of the employee benefit contributions in question before the end of that subsequent period, or
  - (b) where the making of the contributions is itself the provision of qualifying benefits, the contributions are made before the end of that subsequent period. 15

*“Provision of qualifying benefits”*

- 2 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule qualifying benefits are provided where there is a payment of money or transfer of assets, otherwise than by way of loan, that – 20
- (a) gives rise both to an employment income tax charge and to an NIC charge, or would do if the conditions in sub-paragraph (3) were met, or
  - (b) is made in connection with the termination of the recipient’s employment with the employer. 25
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(a) –
- “employment income tax charge” means a charge to tax under the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) (whether on the recipient or on someone else);
  - “NIC charge” means a liability to pay national insurance contributions under section 6 (Class 1 contributions), 10 (Class 1A contributions) or 10A (Class 1B contributions) of the Contributions and Benefits Act. 30
- (3) The conditions mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) are –
- (a) that the duties of the employment in respect of which the payment or transfer was made were performed in the United Kingdom, and
  - (b) that the person in respect of whose employment the payment or transfer was made fulfilled at all relevant times the conditions as to residence or presence in Great Britain or Northern Ireland prescribed under section 1(6)(a) of the Contributions and Benefits Act. 35
- (4) In this paragraph “the Contributions and Benefits Act” means –
- (a) the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 (c. 4), or
  - (b) the Social Security Contributions and Benefits (Northern Ireland) Act 1992 (c. 7). 40
- (5) Where the provision of a qualifying benefit takes the form of the payment of money, the benefit is treated for the purposes of this Schedule as provided at the time when the money is treated as received for the purposes of 45

Chapter 4 of Part 2 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003, applying the rules in section 18 of that Act (receipt of money earnings).

*“Qualifying expenses”*

- 3 In this Schedule “qualifying expenses” –
- (a) does not include expenses that, if incurred by the employer, would not be deductible in calculating for tax purposes the employer’s profits for any period, but 5
  - (b) subject to that, includes any expenses of the third party (other than the provision of benefits to employees of the employer) in operating the employee benefit scheme in question. 10

*Payment “out of” employee benefit contributions*

- 4 (1) For the purposes of paragraph 1(3)(a) any qualifying benefits provided or qualifying expenses paid by the third party after the receipt by him of employee benefit contributions are regarded as being provided or paid out of those contributions, up to the total amount of the contributions as reduced by the amount of any benefits or expenses previously provided or paid as mentioned in paragraph 1(3)(a). 15
- (2) For the purposes of paragraph 1(4)(a) any qualifying benefits provided by the third party after the receipt by him of employee benefit contributions are regarded as being provided out of those contributions, up to the total amount of the contributions as reduced by the amount of any benefits or expenses previously provided or paid as mentioned in paragraph 1(3)(a) or (4)(a). 20
- (3) In applying sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) above no account shall be taken of any other amount received or paid by the third party. 25

*Transfer of asset to employee*

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies where the provision of a qualifying benefit takes the form of the transfer of an asset.
- (2) The amount provided shall be taken for the purposes of this Schedule to be the total of – 30
- (a) the amount (if any) expended on the asset by the third party, and
  - (b) in a case where the asset was transferred to the third party by the employer, the amount of the deduction that would be allowed as mentioned in paragraph 1(1) in respect of the transfer.
- (3) But where the amount given by sub-paragraph (2) above is more than the amount that is charged to tax under the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) in respect of the transfer, or would be so charged if the condition in paragraph 2(3)(a) were met, the deduction allowable under paragraph 1(3) or (4) is limited to that lower amount. 35

*Provisional calculation of profits* 40

- 6 Where the calculation referred to in paragraph 1(1) is made before the end of the nine-month period mentioned in paragraph 1(3) –

- (a) for the purposes of making the calculation, paragraph 1(3) shall be read as if the reference to that nine-month period were a reference to the period ending at the time when the calculation is made, but
- (b) after the end of the nine-month period the calculation shall if necessary be adjusted to take account of any benefits provided, expenses paid or contributions made within that period but after the time of the calculation. 5

*Life assurance business*

- 7 (1) In the case of an insurance company carrying on life assurance business, the effect of section 86 of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26) (spreading of relief for acquisition expenses) shall be ignored in determining for the purposes of paragraph 1(1) whether a deduction would (apart from this Schedule) be allowed for a particular period. 10
- (2) But paragraph 1(4) has effect subject to that section where, in accordance with sub-paragraph (1) above, an amount is allowed as a deduction for a particular period under paragraph 1(4). 15

*Deductions to which Schedule does not apply*

- 8 This Schedule does not apply to any deduction that is allowable –
  - (a) in respect of anything given as consideration for goods or services provided in the course of a trade or profession, 20
  - (b) in respect of contributions under a retirement benefits scheme within the meaning of Chapter 1 of Part 14 of the Taxes Act 1988 (see section 611 of that Act),
  - (c) in respect of contributions under a personal pension scheme approved under Chapter 4 of that Part (see section 630 of that Act), 25
  - (d) in respect of contributions under an accident benefit scheme,
  - (e) under Schedule 4AA to that Act (approved share incentive plans),
  - (f) under section 67 of the Finance Act 1989 (qualifying share ownership trusts), or
  - (g) under Schedule 23 to this Act (relief for employee share acquisition). 30

*Interpretation*

- 9 (1) In this Schedule –
  - “accident benefit scheme” means an employee benefit scheme under which benefits may be provided only by reason of a person’s disablement, or death, caused by an accident occurring during his service as an employee of the employer; 35
  - “employee benefit contribution” shall be read in accordance with paragraph 1(2);
  - “employee benefit scheme” means a trust, scheme or other arrangement for the benefit of persons who are, or include, employees of the employer; 40
  - “the employer” shall be read in accordance with paragraph 1(1);
  - “for tax purposes” means for any purposes of income tax or corporation tax;
  - “qualifying benefits” shall be read in accordance with paragraph 2; 45

“qualifying expenses” has the meaning given by paragraph 3;

“the third party” shall be read in accordance with paragraph 1(2).

- (2) A reference in this Schedule to a person’s employee includes a reference to the holder of an office under that person, and “employment” shall be read accordingly. 5

#### *Consequential amendments*

- 10 (1) In section 43 (Schedule D) and section 44 (investment and insurance companies) of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26), in subsection (2) (amounts charged in accounts in respect of employees’ remuneration) for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute “for which provision is made in the accounts”. 10
- (2) In Schedule 29 to the Finance Act 2002 (c. 23) (intangible fixed assets), in paragraph 113(3)(a) (meaning of “potential emoluments”) omit the words “or benefits” and “, or held by an intermediary,”.

#### *Commencement and transitory provisions*

- 11 (1) This Schedule has effect in relation to deductions that would (but for this Schedule) be allowed for a period ending on or after 27th November 2002 in respect of employee benefit contributions made on or after that date. 15
- (2) In relation to any time before the coming into force of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1), this Schedule has effect as if –
- (a) the references to tax under that Act were to income tax under Schedule E; 20
- (b) the reference in paragraph 8(e) to Schedule 4AA to the Taxes Act 1988 (approved share incentive plans) were to Part 12 of Schedule 8 to the Finance Act 2000 (c. 17) (employee share ownership plans);
- (c) for the words in paragraph 2(5) from “treated as received” to the end there were substituted “treated as received for the purposes of section 202A(1)(a) of the Taxes Act 1988, applying the rules in section 202B(1) to (6) of that Act (receipts basis of assessment for Schedule E)”. 25
- (3) In relation to any such time, sections 43(11)(a) and 44(9)(a) of the Finance Act 1989 have effect with the omission of the words “or benefits” and “, or held by an intermediary,”. 30
- (4) In relation to a period beginning before 1st January 2003, the reference in paragraph 8(g) to a deduction allowable under Schedule 23 to this Act shall be read as a reference to a deduction allowable to a company for that period in respect of a person – 35
- (a) acquiring shares that are qualifying shares within the meaning of that Schedule, or
- (b) having a right to acquire such shares, 40
- whether in that period or subsequently, by reason of his or another’s employment with the company.



## SCHEDULE 25

Section 148(3)

DETERMINATION OF PROFITS ATTRIBUTABLE TO PERMANENT ESTABLISHMENT:  
SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

The Schedule inserted in the Taxes Act 1988 as Schedule A1 is as follows –

“SCHEDULE A1 5DETERMINATION OF PROFITS ATTRIBUTABLE TO PERMANENT ESTABLISHMENT:  
SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

## PART 1

## INTRODUCTION

*Introduction* 10

- 1 (1) The provisions of this Schedule have effect for supplementing section 11AA as regards the determination of the profits attributable to a permanent establishment in the United Kingdom of a company that is not resident in the United Kingdom (“the non-resident company”). 15
- (2) In this Schedule “the separate enterprise principle” means the principle in section 11AA(2) (read with subsection (3) of that section).

## PART 2

GENERAL PROVISIONS 20*Transactions treated as taking place at arm’s length*

- 2 In accordance with the separate enterprise principle, transactions between the permanent establishment and any other part of the non-resident company are treated as taking place on such terms as would have been agreed between parties dealing at arm’s length. 25

*Application of general provision as to allowable deductions*

- 3 (1) Section 11AA(4) (general provision as to allowable deductions) applies whether or not the expenses are incurred by, or reimbursed by, the permanent establishment.
- (2) The amount of expenses to be taken into account under section 11AA(4) is the actual cost to the non-resident company. 30

*Prohibition of deductions for payments in respect of intangible assets*

- 4 (1) No deduction is allowed in respect of royalties paid, or other similar payments made, by the permanent establishment to any other part of the non-resident company in respect of the use of intangible assets held by the company. 35

- (2) This does not prevent a deduction in respect of any contribution by the permanent establishment to the costs of creation of an intangible asset.
- (3) In this paragraph “intangible asset” has the meaning it has for accounting purposes, and includes any intellectual property (as defined in paragraph 2(2) of Schedule 29 to the Finance Act 2002). 5

*Prohibition of deductions for interest or other financing costs*

- 5 (1) No deduction is allowed in respect of payments of interest or other financing costs by the permanent establishment to any other part of the non-resident company, except as provided by sub-paragraph (2). 10
- (2) The restriction in sub-paragraph (1) above does not apply to interest or other costs of financing that are payable in respect of borrowing by the permanent establishment in the ordinary course of a financial business carried on by it. 15
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2) “financial business” means any of the following –
- (a) banking, deposit-taking, money-lending or debt-factoring, or a business similar to any of those;
- (b) dealing in commodity or financial futures. 20

*Provision of goods or services for permanent establishment*

- 6 (1) This paragraph applies where the non-resident company provides the permanent establishment with goods or services.
- (2) If the goods or services are of a kind that the company supplies, in the ordinary course of its business, to third parties dealing with it at arm’s length, the matter is dealt with as a transaction to which the separate enterprise principle applies. 25
- (3) If not, the matter is dealt with as an expense incurred by the non-resident company for the purposes of the permanent establishment. 30

PART 3

PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO NON-RESIDENT BANKS

*Application of this Part*

- 7 (1) The provisions of this Part of this Schedule have effect where the non-resident company is a bank. 35  
“Bank” for this purpose has the meaning given by section 840A.
- (2) Nothing in this Part of this Schedule shall be read as preventing the application of principles similar to those provided for in this Part in applying the separate enterprise principle to a non-resident company that is not a bank. 40

*Non-resident banks: transfer of financial assets*

- 8 (1) In accordance with the separate enterprise principle, transfers of loans and other financial assets between the permanent establishment and any other part of the company are recognised only if they would have taken place between independent enterprises. 5
- (2) Such a transfer is not recognised where it cannot reasonably be considered that it is carried out for valid commercial reasons. For this purpose the obtaining of a tax advantage is not a valid commercial reason. 10

*Loans by non-resident banks: attribution of financial assets and profits arising*

- 9 (1) In accordance with the separate enterprise principle, loans and other financial assets, and profits arising from them, are attributed to a permanent establishment to the extent that they can reasonably be regarded as having been generated by the activities of the permanent establishment. 15
- (2) The following provisions have effect as regards the factors to be taken into account.
- (3) Particular account shall be taken of the extent to which the permanent establishment is responsible for – 20
- (a) obtaining the offer of new business;
  - (b) establishing the potential borrower's credit rating and the risk involved in providing credit;
  - (c) negotiating the terms of the loan with the borrower;
  - (d) deciding whether, and if so on what conditions, to make or extend the loan. 25
- (4) Account may also be taken of the extent to which the permanent establishment is responsible for – 30
- (a) concluding the loan agreement and disbursing the proceeds of the loan;
  - (b) administering the loan (including handling and monitoring the service of it) and holding and controlling any securities pledged.
- (5) References in this paragraph to a financial asset include any financial risk in relation to a loan, or potential loan, that is capable of giving rise to fees or other receipts and for which the holding of capital is required (or would be required if the transaction were between parties at arm's length). 35

*Borrowing by non-resident banks: permanent establishment acting as agent or intermediary* 40

- 10 (1) This paragraph applies where a permanent establishment –
- (a) borrows funds for the purposes of another part of the non-resident company, and
  - (b) in relation to that borrowing acts only as an agent or intermediary. 45

- (2) In such a case, in accordance with the separate enterprise principle—
- (a) the profits attributable to the permanent establishment, and
  - (b) the capital attributable to the permanent establishment under section 11AA(3),
- shall be that appropriate in the case of an agent acting at arm's length, taking into account the risks and costs borne by the establishment.”.

## SCHEDULE 26

Section 151

10

NON-RESIDENT COMPANIES: TRANSACTIONS THROUGH BROKER, INVESTMENT  
MANAGER OR LLOYD'S AGENT*Introduction*

- 1 (1) This Schedule makes provision about transactions carried out on behalf of a company that is not resident in the United Kingdom (a “non-resident company”), in the course of that company's trade, by a person in the United Kingdom acting as—
- (a) a broker (paragraph 2),
  - (b) an investment manager (paragraphs 3 to 5), or
  - (c) a members' or managing agent at Lloyd's (paragraph 6).
- (2) The provisions of this Schedule supplement—
- (a) section 147(3) (meaning of “permanent establishment”: not to include independent agent), and
  - (b) section 150(2)(c) (limit on income tax chargeable on non-resident company: income arising from transactions carried out through independent agent).

*Brokers*

- 2 (1) In relation to a transaction carried out on behalf of a non-resident company, a broker is regarded as an agent of independent status acting in the ordinary course of his business if, and only if, the following conditions are met.
- (2) The conditions are—
- (a) that at the time of the transaction he is carrying on the business of a broker;
  - (b) that the transaction is carried out by him in the ordinary course of that business;
  - (c) that the remuneration he receives in respect of the transaction for the provision of the services of a broker to the non-resident company is not less than is customary for that class of business; and
  - (d) that he does not fall to be treated as a permanent establishment of the non-resident company in relation to any other transaction carried out in the same accounting period.

*Investment managers*

- 3 (1) In relation to an investment transaction carried out on behalf of a non-resident company by a person providing investment management services (an “investment manager”), the investment manager is regarded as an agent of independent status acting in the ordinary course of his business if, and only if, the following conditions are met. 5
- (2) The conditions are –
- (a) that at the time of the transaction he is carrying on a business of providing investment management services;
  - (b) that the transaction is carried out in the ordinary course of that business; 10
  - (c) that he acts on behalf of the non-resident company in relation to the transaction in an independent capacity;
  - (d) that the requirements of the 20% rule are met (see paragraph 4);
  - (e) that the remuneration he receives in respect of the transaction for the provision to the non-resident company of investment management services is not less than is customary for that class of business; and 15
  - (f) that he does not fall to be treated as a permanent establishment of the company in relation to any other transaction carried out in the same accounting period. 20
- (3) In sub-paragraph (1) “investment transaction” means –
- (a) transactions in shares, stock, futures contracts, options contracts or securities of any description not mentioned in this paragraph, but excluding futures contracts or options contracts relating to land,
  - (b) transactions consisting in the buying or selling of any foreign currency or in the placing of money at interest, and 25
  - (c) such other transactions as the Treasury may by regulations designate for the purposes of this Schedule.
- Regulations for the purposes of paragraph (c) shall be made by statutory instrument which shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the House of Commons. 30
- (4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3) a contract is not prevented from being a futures contract or an options contract by the fact that any party is or may be entitled to receive or liable to make, or entitled to receive and liable to make, only a payment of a sum (as opposed to a transfer of assets other than money) in full settlement of all obligations. 35

*Investment managers: the 20% rule*

- 4 (1) The requirements of the 20% rule are –
- (a) that in relation to a qualifying period (see sub-paragraph (2)) it has been or is the intention of the investment manager and the persons connected with him that the company’s relevant excluded income (see sub-paragraph (3)) should, as to at least 80%, consist of amounts to which neither he nor any such person has a beneficial entitlement (see sub-paragraph (4)), and 40
  - (b) to the extent that there is a failure to fulfil that intention, that failure – 45

- (i) is attributable (directly or indirectly) to matters outside the control of the investment manager and persons connected with him, and
  - (ii) does not result from a failure by him or any of those persons to take such steps as may be reasonable for mitigating the effect of those matters in relation to the fulfilment of that intention. 5
- (2) A “qualifying period” means –
  - (a) the accounting period in which the transaction in question is carried out, or 10
  - (b) a period of not more than five years comprising two or more complete accounting periods including that one.
- (3) The “relevant excluded income” of a non-resident company for a qualifying period is the aggregate of such of the chargeable profits of the company for the accounting periods comprised in the qualifying period as derive from transactions carried out by the investment manager on the company’s behalf in relation to which the manager does not (apart from the requirements of the 20% rule) fall to be treated as a permanent establishment of the company. 15
- (4) A person has a “beneficial entitlement” to relevant excluded income if he has or may acquire a beneficial entitlement by virtue of –
  - (a) an interest of his (whether or not an interest giving a right to an immediate payment of a share in the profits or gains) in property in which the whole or any part of that income is represented, or
  - (b) an interest of his in or other rights in relation to the non-resident company, 20  
that is or would be attributable to that income. 25
- (5) In the case of a transaction in relation to which the conditions in paragraph 3 are met except for the requirements of the 20% rule, this Schedule has effect as if the requirements of that rule were met in relation to so much of the chargeable profits of the non-resident company deriving from the transaction as do not represent relevant excluded income of the company to which the investment manager or a person connected with him has or has had any beneficial entitlement. 30

*Investment managers: application of 20% rule to collective investment schemes*

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies where amounts arise or accrue to the non-resident company as a participant in a collective investment scheme. 35
- (2) The requirements of the 20% rule need not be met in relation to a transaction carried out for the purposes of the scheme if the scheme is such that, if the following assumptions applied –
  - (a) that all transactions carried out for the purposes of the scheme were carried out on behalf of a company constituted for the purposes of the scheme and resident outside the United Kingdom, and 40
  - (b) that the participants did not have any rights in respect of the amounts arising or accruing in respect of those transactions other than the rights that, if they held shares in the company on whose behalf the transactions are assumed to be carried out, would be their rights as shareholders, 45

the assumed company would not, in relation to the accounting period in which the transaction was carried out, be regarded for tax purposes as carrying on a trade in the United Kingdom.

- (3) Where on those assumptions the assumed company would be regarded for tax purposes as carrying on a trade in the United Kingdom, paragraph 4 has effect with the following modifications in relation to a transaction carried out for the purposes of the scheme—
- (a) for references to the non-resident company substitute references to the assumed company;
  - (b) for references to the non-resident company’s relevant excluded income substitute references to the aggregate of the amounts that would for accounting periods comprised in the qualifying period, be chargeable to tax on the assumed company as profits deriving from the transactions carried out by the investment manager and assumed to be carried out on behalf of the company.
- (4) In this paragraph “collective investment scheme” has the meaning given by section 235 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8), and “participant”, in relation to such a scheme, shall be construed in accordance with that section.

*Lloyd’s agents* 20

- 6 (1) Where a non-resident company is a member of Lloyd’s and the transaction is carried out in the course of the company’s underwriting business, a person who acts on behalf of the company in relation to the transaction is regarded as an independent agent acting in the ordinary course of his business if he acts as members’ agent or as managing agent of the syndicate in question. 25
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) the reference to the non-resident company being a member of Lloyd’s is to its being a corporate member within the meaning of Chapter 5 of Part 4 of the Finance Act 1994 (c. 9); and 30
  - (b) the references to a members’ agent and to a managing agent shall be construed in accordance with section 230 of that Act.

*General supplementary provisions*

- 7 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule a person is regarded as carrying out a transaction on behalf of another where he undertakes the transaction himself, whether on behalf of or to the account of that other, and also where he gives instructions for it to be so carried out by another. 35
- (2) For the purposes of this Schedule a person is regarded as acting in an independent capacity on behalf of a company only if the relationship between them, having regard to its legal, financial and commercial characteristics, is a relationship between persons carrying on independent businesses that deal with each other at arm’s length. 40
- (3) Section 839 of the Taxes Act 1988 (connected persons) applies for the purposes of this Schedule.
- (4) This Schedule has effect in the case of a person who acts as a broker or provides investment services as part only of a business as if that part were a separate business. 45

## SCHEDULE 27

Section 154

## PERMANENT ESTABLISHMENT ETC: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

*Taxes Act 1988*

- 1 (1) The Taxes Act 1988 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 606 (persons responsible in case of default of administrator of retirement benefits scheme), for subsection (13) substitute— 5
- “(13) References in this section to the employer include, where the employer is not resident in the United Kingdom, any person who is treated as UK representative of the employer under section 126 of the Finance Act 1995 or section 149 of the Finance Act 2003.”. 10
- (3) In section 806L (carry forward or carry back of unrelieved foreign tax), for subsection (7) substitute—
- “(7) In this section—
- “overseas permanent establishment” means a permanent establishment through which a company carries on a trade in a territory outside the United Kingdom; and 15
- “permanent establishment” —
- (a) if there are arrangements having effect under section 788 in relation to the territory concerned that define the expression, has the meaning given by those arrangements, and 20
- (b) if there are no such arrangements, or if they do not define the expression, has the meaning given by section 147 of the Finance Act 2003.”.
- (4) In Schedule 15 (qualifying policies), in paragraph 24 (policies issued by non-resident companies), in sub-paragraph (3)(b) (twice) and (c) for “branch” substitute “permanent establishment”. 25

*Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992*

- 2 (1) The Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 10 (non-resident with United Kingdom branch or agency)— 30
- (a) omit subsection (3); and
- (b) in subsection (4), omit “or corporation tax”.
- (3) In sections 13(5)(d), 25(7)(b), 106(10), 139(1A), 140A(2), 159(4)(b), 171(1A), 175(2AA), 179(1A), 190(2)(b) and (3)(b), 199(6)(b) and 228(6)(b), and in Schedule 7A, paragraph 1(3A), for “10(3)” substitute “10B”. 35

*Finance Act 1993*

- 3 (1) In sections 93 and 93A of the Finance Act 1993 (c. 34) (use of currency other than sterling) for “branch”, wherever occurring, substitute “permanent establishment”.
- (2) The provisions in which the above amendment is to be made are— 40
- (a) in section 93, subsection (2)(b) and the definition of “return of accounts” in subsection (7) (twice);



- (b) in section 93A, subsections (2)(b), (3)(b) and (7)(b).

*Finance Act 1995*

- 4 (1) Section 126 of the Finance Act 1995 (c. 4) (UK representatives of non-residents) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), omit the words “, corporation tax”. 5
- (3) In subsection (2) –
- (a) after paragraph (b) insert “and”;
- (b) in paragraph (c) omit the words from “or fall” to “non-resident”; and
- (c) omit sub-paragraph (d) and the word “and” preceding it.
- (4) For subsection (8) substitute – 10
- “(8) In this section, “branch or agency” means any factorship, agency, receivership, branch or management.”.
- (5) In subsection (9), omit paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it.
- (6) After subsection (9) insert –
- “(10) This section does not apply in relation to income tax chargeable on income of a company otherwise than as a trustee.”. 15
- 5 (1) Section 127 of the Finance Act 1995 (c. 4) (persons not treated as UK representatives) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for “(a) to (d)” substitute “(a) to (c)”.
- (3) In subsection (5)(b) omit “or 129”. 20
- (4) In subsection (17), in the definition of “branch or agency” for “the Management Act” substitute “section 126 above”.
- (5) In subsection (19) omit paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it.
- 6 In section 128 of the Finance Act 1995 (limit on income chargeable on non-residents: income tax), after subsection (11) insert – 25
- “(12) This section does not apply in relation to income tax chargeable on income of a company otherwise than as a trustee.”.
- 7 Omit section 129 of the Finance Act 1995 (limit on income chargeable on non-residents: corporation tax).

*Finance Act 1996*

- 8 In Schedule 15 to the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) (loan relationships: transitional provisions), in paragraph 8(6)(c) – 30
- (a) for “10(3)” substitute “10B”, and
- (b) for “on a disposal by a branch or agency” substitute “attributable to a permanent establishment”. 35

*Finance Act 2000*

- 9 In Schedule 15 to the Finance Act 2000 (c. 17) (corporate venturing scheme), in paragraph 79(5) (gain accruing on chargeable event), for “section 10” substitute “section 10B”.

## SCHEDULE 28

Section 158

## CAPITAL GAINS TAX: REPORTING LIMITS AND ANNUAL EXEMPT AMOUNT

## PART 1

## REPORTING LIMITS

- |   |   |    |
|---|---|----|
| 1 | After section 3 of the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12) insert—  | 5  |
|   | <b>“3A Reporting limits</b>   |    |
|   | (1) Where in the case of an individual—   |    |
|   | (a) the amount of chargeable gains accruing to him in any year of assessment does not exceed the exempt amount for that year, and   | 10 |
|   | (b) the aggregate amount or value of the consideration for all chargeable disposals of assets made by him in that year does not exceed four times the exempt amount for that year, a statement to that effect is sufficient compliance with so much of any notice under section 8 of the Management Act as requires information for the purposes of establishing the amount in which he is chargeable to capital gains tax for that year. | 15 |
|   | (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(a) above—  |    |
|   | (a) the amount of chargeable gains accruing to an individual in a year of assessment for which no deduction falls to be made in respect of allowable losses is the amount after any reduction for taper relief;   | 20 |
|   | (b) the amount of chargeable gains accruing to an individual in a year of assessment for which such a deduction does fall to be made is the amount before deduction of losses or any reduction for taper relief.  | 25 |
|   | (3) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b) above a “chargeable disposal” is any disposal other than—   |    |
|   | (a) a disposal on which any gain accruing is not a chargeable gain, or  | 30 |
|   | (b) a disposal the consideration for which is treated by virtue of section 58 (husband and wife) as being such that neither a gain nor a loss would accrue.   |    |
|   | (4) Subsection (1) above applies to personal representatives (for the year of assessment in which the individual in question dies and for the next 2 following years) as it applies to an individual.   | 35 |
|   | (5) Subsection (1) above applies to the trustees of a settlement in accordance with Schedule 1.   |    |
|   | (6) In this section “exempt amount” has the meaning given by section 3 (read, where appropriate, with Schedule 1).”.  | 40 |
| 2 | (1) In the heading to Schedule 1 to that Act (application of exempt amount in cases involving settled property) after “EXEMPT AMOUNT” insert “AND REPORTING LIMITS”.  |    |
|   | (2) In paragraph 1 of that Schedule (trustees for person with a disability) after   |    |

---

sub-paragraph (5) insert –	
“(5A) In its application to the trustees of a settlement, section 3A(1) has effect with the substitution for the reference to section 8 of the Management Act of a reference to section 8A of that Act.”.	
(3) In paragraph 2 of that Schedule (other trustees) after sub-paragraph (6) insert –	5
“(6A) In its application to the trustees of a settlement, section 3A(1) has effect with the substitution for the reference to section 8 of the Management Act of a reference to section 8A of that Act.”.	
PART 2	
ANNUAL EXEMPT AMOUNT	
3 (1) Section 3 of the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12) is amended as follows.	
(2) Omit subsection (6).	
(3) In subsection (7) for “subsections (1) to (6)” substitute “subsections (1) to (5C)”.	15
(4) After that subsection insert –	
“(7A) As they apply by virtue of subsection (7) above –	
(a) subsection (5A) has effect with the omission of paragraph (b), and	20
(b) subsection (5B) has effect with the omission of the words “or (b)”.”.	
4 (1) Paragraph 1 of Schedule 1 to that Act is amended as follows.	
(2) In sub-paragraph (1), in the words following paragraph (b) –	
(a) for “section 3(1) to (6)” substitute “sections 3(1) to (5C) and 3A”;	25
(b) at the end insert “, but with the modifications specified in this paragraph”.	
(3) After sub-paragraph (2) insert –	
“(2A) As they apply by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above –	
(a) section 3(5A) has effect with the omission of paragraph (b), and	30
(b) section 3(5B) has effect with the omission of the words “or (b)”.”.	
(4) In sub-paragraph (3) –	
(a) for “section 3” substitute “sections 3 and 3A(1)(a)”;	35
(b) after “the exempt amount for the year”, where it first occurs, insert “(except the one in section 3(2))”.	
(5) In sub-paragraph (7) for “An inspector” substitute “An officer of the Board”.	
5 (1) Paragraph 2 of that Schedule is amended as follows.	
(2) In sub-paragraph (1) for “section 3(1) to (6)” substitute “sections 3(1) to (5C) and 3A”.	40
(3) In sub-paragraph (2) –	

- 
- (a) for “subsections (1) and (5)” substitute “section 3(1), (5A), (5B) and (5C)”;
- (b) after “section 3(1), (5A), (5B) and (5C)” insert “and section 3A(1)(a)”.
- (4) After sub-paragraph (2) insert –
- “(2A) As they apply by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above –
- (a) section 3(5A) has effect with the omission of paragraph (b), and
- (b) section 3(5B) has effect with the omission of the words “or (b)”.”.
- (5) Omit sub-paragraph (3).
- (6) In sub-paragraph (9) for “An inspector” substitute “An officer of the Board”.
- 6 In the first column of the Table in section 98 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (c. 9) (penalty for failure to furnish particulars etc), at the appropriate place insert –
- “Paragraph 1(7) of Schedule 1 to the 1992 Act.”.

### PART 3

#### COMMENCEMENT

- 7 The amendments in paragraphs 1, 2, 3(2) and (3), 4(2)(a) and (4)(a) and 5(2), (3)(b) and (5) of this Schedule apply in relation to any notice under section 8 or, as the case may be, section 8A of the Taxes Management Act 1970 given in relation to the year 2003-04 or any subsequent year of assessment.
- 8 The amendments in paragraphs 3(4), 4(2)(b), (3) and (4)(b) and 5(3)(a) and (4) of this Schedule shall be deemed always to have had effect.
- 9 The amendments in paragraphs 4(5), 5(6) and 6 of this Schedule have effect in relation to any notice given in respect of the year 2002-03 or any subsequent year of assessment, except that the amendment in paragraph 6 has effect only in relation to such a notice given after the passing of this Act.

### SCHEDULE 29

Section 162(2)

#### TRANSFERS OF VALUE: ATTRIBUTION OF GAINS TO BENEFICIARIES

- Introduction* 30
- 1 Schedule 4C to the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12) (transfers of value: attribution of gains to beneficiaries) is amended as follows.
- Scope and scheme of Schedule*
- 2 For paragraphs 1 and 2 (introduction and general scheme of Schedule)

substitute –

*“Introduction*

- 1 (1) This Schedule applies where the trustees of a settlement (“the transferor settlement”) make a transfer of value to which Schedule 4B applies (“the original transfer”). 5
- (2) Where this Schedule applies, the following gains –
- (a) any Schedule 4B trust gains accruing by virtue of the transfer (see paragraphs 3 to 7), and
  - (b) any outstanding section 87/89 gains of the transferor settlement at the end of the year of assessment in which the transfer is made (see paragraph 7A),
- are pooled for the purpose of attributing them, in accordance with this Schedule, to beneficiaries who receive capital payments. Paragraph 7B provides for further gains to be brought into the pool in the case of a further transfer of value. 10 15
- (3) The gains mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) are referred to in this Schedule as “Schedule 4C gains” and the pool is referred to as the transferor settlement’s “Schedule 4C pool”.
- (4) Paragraphs 8 to 9 provide for the attribution of gains in a settlement’s Schedule 4C pool. 20
- (5) References in this Schedule to a transfer to which Schedule 4B applies include any such transfer, whether or not any chargeable gain or allowable loss accrues under that Schedule by virtue of the transfer.

*Other gains to be brought into Schedule 4C pool* 25

3 After paragraph 7 insert –

*“Outstanding section 87/89 gains*

- 7A (1) The amount of outstanding section 87/89 gains of a settlement at the end of a year of assessment is given by –
- $$G - B + NC \quad 30$$
- where –
- G is the amount of the settlement’s section 87/89 gains for the year (see sub-paragraphs (2) and (3)),
  - B is the amount of the gains treated in accordance with section 87(4) or 89(2) as accruing in that year to beneficiaries, and
  - NC is the amount of gains so treated as accruing in that year to beneficiaries who were not chargeable to tax for that year.
- (2) The amount of a settlement’s section 87/89 gains for a year of assessment is – 40
- (a) if section 87 applies to the settlement for the year –

- (i) the amount of the settlement’s trust gains within the meaning of section 87(2), together with
- (ii) any amount by which that amount falls to be increased under section 90(1)(a), or would fall to be increased but for section 90(2) or (3); 5
- (b) if section 89(2) applies to the settlement for the year (otherwise than by virtue of section 90(1)(c)) –
  - (i) the amount of the trust gains referred to in section 89(2), together with
  - (ii) any amount by which that amount falls to be increased under section 90(1)(b), or would fall to be increased but for section 90(2) or (3); 10
- (c) if section 90(1)(c) applies to the settlement for the year, the amount that falls to be treated as trust gains in accordance with that provision, or would fall to be so treated but for section 90(2) or (3). 15

*Gains to be brought into pool on subsequent transfer of value*

- 7B (1) Where the trustees of a settlement who have made a transfer of value to which Schedule 4B applies make a further transfer of value to which that Schedule applies, the following provisions apply. 20
- (2) If the further transfer is made in the same year of assessment as the original transfer, any Schedule 4B trust gains accruing by virtue of the further transfer are brought into the settlement’s Schedule 4C pool at the end of the year. 25
- (3) If the further transfer is made in a later year of assessment at the beginning of which there are outstanding gains in the settlement’s Schedule 4C pool –
- (a) any Schedule 4B trust gains accruing by virtue of the further transfer, and 30
  - (b) any outstanding section 87/89 gains of the settlement at the end of the later year of assessment,
- are brought into the settlement’s Schedule 4C pool at the end of the later year.
- “Outstanding gains in the settlement’s Schedule 4C pool” means gains in that pool that have not been attributed to beneficiaries in accordance with this Schedule. 35
- (4) If the further transfer is made in a later year of assessment at the beginning of which the settlement no longer has a Schedule 4C pool, the provisions of this Schedule apply in relation to the further transfer as they applied in relation to the original transfer. 40
- (5) For the purposes of this paragraph a settlement is treated as continuing to have a Schedule 4C pool until the end of the last year of assessment in which there are any gains in the pool.”

*Attribution of gains to beneficiaries*

4 (1) For paragraphs 8 and 9 (attribution of gains to beneficiaries) substitute –

*“Attribution of Schedule 4C gains to beneficiaries*

- 8 (1) The gains in a settlement’s Schedule 4C pool at the end of any year of assessment are treated as chargeable gains accruing in that year to beneficiaries who receive in that year, or have received in an earlier year, capital payments from the trustees of any settlement that is a relevant settlement in relation to the pool. 5  
Paragraph 8A defines “relevant settlement” for this purpose.
- (2) The attribution of chargeable gains to beneficiaries under this paragraph shall be made in proportion to, but shall not exceed, the amounts of the capital payments made to them. 10  
Paragraphs 8B and 8C provide for the matching of gains with available capital payments.
- (3) A chargeable gain shall not be treated as accruing to a beneficiary under this Schedule unless he is chargeable to tax for that year of assessment. 15
- (4) For the purposes of this Schedule a beneficiary is “chargeable to tax” for a year of assessment if, and only if – 20  
(a) he is resident in the United Kingdom for any part of that year or is ordinarily resident in the United Kingdom for that year, and  
(b) he is domiciled in the United Kingdom for any part of that year.
- (5) Any gains in a settlement’s Schedule 4C pool that are not attributed to beneficiaries in a year of assessment are carried forward to the following year of assessment, when this paragraph applies again. 25

*Relevant settlements*

- 8A (1) This paragraph specifies what settlements are relevant settlements in relation to a Schedule 4C pool. 30
- (2) The transferor and transferee settlements in relation to the original transfer of value are relevant settlements.
- (3) If the trustees of any settlement that is a relevant settlement in relation to a Schedule 4C pool – 35  
(a) make a transfer of value to which Schedule 4B applies, or  
(b) make a transfer of settled property to which section 90 applies,  
any settlement that is a transferee settlement in relation to that transfer is also a relevant settlement in relation to that pool. 40
- (4) If the trustees of a settlement that is a relevant settlement in relation to a Schedule 4C pool make a transfer of value to which Schedule 4B applies, any other settlement that is a relevant settlement in relation to that pool is also a relevant settlement in relation to the Schedule 4C pool arising from the further transfer. 45

*Attribution of gains in Schedule 4C pool*

- 8B (1) The following rules apply as regards the attribution of the gains in a settlement's Schedule 4C pool to beneficiaries of relevant settlements. This paragraph has effect subject to paragraph 8C (order of attribution as between gains in Schedule 4C pool and other trust gains). 5
- (2) Gains of earlier years are attributed to beneficiaries before gains of later years.
- (3) For the purposes of this Schedule the year of a gain is determined as follows – 10
- (a) a Schedule 4B trust gain is a gain of the year of assessment in which the transfer of value in question takes place;
- (b) a section 87/89 gain is a gain of the year of assessment in which it first forms part of a settlement's trust gains in accordance with section 87(2). 15
- (4) Gains of the same year are matched with available capital payments made at any time by trustees of any relevant settlement.
- (5) If gains of one year are wholly matched, gains of the next year are then matched, and so on. 20
- (6) The gains are attributed to beneficiaries in proportion to, but not so as to exceed, the amount of available capital payments received by them.

*Attribution of gains: Schedule 4C pool gains and other gains*

- 8C (1) Where in a year of assessment – 25
- (a) gains in a settlement's Schedule 4C pool fall to be attributed to beneficiaries of relevant settlements, and
- (b) one or more of those settlements also have gains that fall to be attributed to beneficiaries under section 87(4) or 89(2), the provisions of paragraph 8B have effect as follows. 30
- (2) The rules in that paragraph apply in relation to all the gains falling to be so attributed.
- (3) As between gains of the same year, Schedule 4C gains are attributed to beneficiaries before other gains.

*Attribution of gains: available capital payments* 35

- 9 (1) In any year of assessment capital payments made to a beneficiary by the trustees of a relevant settlement, in that year or any earlier year, are available for the purposes of paragraphs 8 to 8C subject to the following provisions.
- (2) A capital payment is no longer available to the extent that chargeable gains have, by reason of it, been treated as accruing to the recipient in an earlier year of assessment – 40
- (a) under this Schedule, or
- (b) under section 87(4) or 89(2).



(3) Capital payments received – (a) before 21st March 2000, or (b) before the year of assessment preceding the year of assessment in which the original transfer of value was made, shall be disregarded.”.	5
(2) After paragraph 12 insert – <i>“Attribution of gains to beneficiaries in section 10A cases</i>	
12A (1) This paragraph applies where by virtue of section 10A an amount of gains would (apart from this Schedule) be treated under section 87 as accruing to a person (“the beneficiary”) in the year of return by virtue of a capital payment made to him in an intervening year.	10
(2) Where this paragraph applies, a capital payment equal to so much of that capital payment as exceeds the amount otherwise charged shall be deemed for the purposes of this Schedule to be made to the beneficiary in the year of return.	15
(3) The “amount otherwise charged” means the total of any chargeable gains attributed to the beneficiary under section 87(4) or 89(2) by virtue of the capital payment.	
(4) For the purposes of paragraph 13(5)(b) a deemed capital payment under this paragraph shall be treated as made when the actual capital payment mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above was made.	20
(5) Expressions used in this paragraph and section 10A have the same meanings in this paragraph as in that section”.	
<i>Gains attributed to settlor</i>	25
5 (1) Paragraph 6 is amended as follows. (2) In sub-paragraph (1), in the opening words, for “the amount of any chargeable gains” substitute “the tapered amount of any chargeable gains”. (3) After that sub-paragraph insert – “(1A) The reference in sub-paragraph (1) to the tapered amount of any chargeable gains is a reference – (a) where section 86(4) applies, to the tapered section 86(4) amount as defined in section 87(3A); (b) where section 10A applies, to the tapered section 86(1)(e) amount as defined in section 86A(7A).”.	30 35
<i>Minor and consequential amendments</i>	
6 (1) In paragraph 10(1) for “of the transferor settlement, or of any transferee settlement,” substitute “of any relevant settlement”. (2) In paragraph 12 – (a) in sub-paragraph (1)(a) for “arising under Schedule 4B” substitute “included in a settlement’s Schedule 4C pool”, (b) in sub-paragraph (2) for “the Schedule 4B trust gains” substitute “the settlement’s Schedule 4C gains”, and	40

- (c) in sub-paragraph (3) for “the transferor or transferee settlements” substitute “any relevant settlement”.
- (3) In paragraph 13(5)(a) for “that in which the transfer of value was made” substitute “the year of the gain (determined in accordance with paragraph 8B(3))”.
- (4) After paragraph 13 insert –
- “Effect of settlement ceasing to exist after transfer of value*
- 13A Where a settlement ceases to exist after the trustees have made a transfer of value to which Schedule 4B applies, this Schedule has effect as if a year of assessment had ended immediately before the settlement ceased to exist.”.

## SCHEDULE 30

Section 166

## FIRST-YEAR ALLOWANCES FOR EXPENDITURE ON ENVIRONMENTALLY BENEFICIAL PLANT OR MACHINERY

- Introductory*
- 1 The Capital Allowances Act 2001 (c. 2) is amended as follows.
- Types of expenditure for which first-year allowances available*
- 2 In section 39 –
- (a) after “under” insert “any of the following provisions”;
- (b) at the end of the entry relating to section 45E, omit “or”;
- (c) after the entry relating to section 45F add –
- “section 45H expenditure on environmentally beneficial plant or machinery.”.
- First-year qualifying expenditure on environmentally beneficial plant or machinery*
- 3 After section 45G insert –
- “45H Expenditure on environmentally beneficial plant or machinery**
- (1) Expenditure is first-year qualifying expenditure if –
- (a) it is expenditure on environmentally beneficial plant or machinery that is unused and not second-hand,
- (b) it is incurred on or after 1st April 2003,
- (c) it is not long-life asset expenditure, and
- (d) it is not excluded by section 46 (general exclusions).
- (2) Environmentally beneficial plant or machinery means plant or machinery in relation to which the following conditions are met –
- (a) when the expenditure is incurred, or

- (b) when the contract for the provision of the plant or machinery is entered into.
- (3) The conditions are that the plant or machinery –
- (a) is of a description specified by Treasury order, and
  - (b) meets the environmental criteria specified by Treasury order for plant or machinery of that description. 5
- (4) The Treasury may make such orders under subsection (3) as appear to them appropriate to promote the use of technologies, or products, designed to remedy or prevent damage to the physical environment or natural resources. 10
- (5) Any such order may make provision by reference to any technology list, or product list, issued by the Secretary of State (whether before or after the coming into force of this section).
- 45I Certification of environmentally beneficial plant and machinery**
- (1) The Treasury may by order provide that, in such cases as may be specified in the order, no section 45H allowance may be made unless a relevant certificate of environmental benefit is in force. 15  
A “section 45H allowance” means a first-year allowance in respect of expenditure that is first-year qualifying expenditure under section 45H. 20
- (2) A certificate of environmental benefit is one certifying that –
- (a) particular plant or machinery, or
  - (b) plant or machinery constructed to a particular design, meets the environmental criteria specified in relation to that description of plant or machinery by order under section 45H. 25
- (3) A relevant certification of environmental benefit means one issued –
- (a) by the Secretary of State or a person authorised by the Secretary of State;
  - (b) in the case of plant or machinery used or for use in Scotland, by the Scottish Ministers or a person authorised by them; 30
  - (c) in the case of plant or machinery used or for use in Wales, by the National Assembly for Wales or a person authorised by it;
  - (d) in the case of plant or machinery used or for use in Northern Ireland, by the Department of Enterprise, Trade and Investment in Northern Ireland or a person authorised by it. 35
- (4) If a certification of environmental benefit is revoked –
- (a) the certificate is treated for the purposes of this section as if it had never been issued, and
  - (b) all such assessments and adjustments shall be made as are necessary as a result of the revocation. 40
- (5) If a person who has made a tax return becomes aware that, as a result of the revocation of a certificate of environmental benefit after the return was made, the return has become incorrect, he must give notice to the Inland Revenue specifying how the return needs to be amended. 45

- (6) The notice must be given within three months beginning with the day on which the person first became aware that anything in the tax return had become incorrect because of the revocation of the certificate.

**45J Environmentally beneficial components of plant or machinery** 5

- (1) This section applies for the purpose of apportioning expenditure incurred on plant or machinery where one or more of the components of the plant or machinery (but not all of it) is of a description specified by Treasury order under section 45H(3).
- (2) If— 10
- (a) only one of the components is of such a description, and
- (b) an amount is specified by the order in respect of that component,
- the part of the expenditure that is section 45H expenditure must not exceed that amount. 15
- (3) If—
- (a) more than one of the components is of such a description, and
- (b) an amount is specified by the order in respect of each of those components,
- the part of the expenditure that is section 45H expenditure must not exceed the total of those amounts. 20
- (4) If the expenditure is treated under this Act as incurred in instalments, the proportion of each instalment that is section 45H expenditure is the same as the proportion of the whole expenditure that is section 45H expenditure. 25
- (5) Where this section applies, the expenditure is not apportioned under section 562(3) (apportionment where property sold with other property).
- (6) In this section “section 45H expenditure” means expenditure that is first-year qualifying expenditure under section 45H.” 30

*General exclusions affecting first-year qualifying expenditure*

- 4 In section 46(1)—
- (a) after “under” insert “any of the following provisions”;
- (b) at the end of the entry relating to section 45E, omit “or”;
- (c) after the entry relating to section 45F add — 35

“section 45H expenditure on environmentally beneficial plant or machinery.”.

*Amount of first-year allowances*

- 5 In section 52(3), in the Table, after the entries relating to expenditure qualifying under section 45F add — 40

“Expenditure qualifying under section 45H 100%”.  
(expenditure on environmentally beneficial  
plant or machinery)

*Penalty for failure to provide information etc*

- 6 In the second column of the Table in section 98 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (c. 9) (penalty for failure to provide information etc), in the entry relating to requirements imposed by the Capital Allowances Act 2001 (c. 2), after “45G(5) and (6)” insert “, 45I(5) and (6)”. 5

*Transitory provision: expenditure incurred etc before first order made*

- 7 (1) For the purposes of section 45H(2) of the Capital Allowances Act 2001, where— 10
- (a) expenditure on plant or machinery is incurred, or a contract for the provision of plant or machinery is entered into, before the first order is made under section 45H(3) of that Act, and
  - (b) if that order had been made before the relevant time, the conditions in section 45H(3) of that Act would have been met, 15
- those conditions shall be treated as if they were met at the relevant time.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “the relevant time” means the time when the expenditure was incurred or (as the case may be) the contract was entered into. 20

SCHEDULE 31

Section 167

TAX RELIEF FOR EXPENDITURE ON RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

PART 1

SMALL AND MEDIUM-SIZED ENTERPRISES: SCHEDULE 20 TO FINANCE ACT 2000

*Introductory* 25

- 1 Schedule 20 to the Finance Act 2000 (c. 17) (tax relief for expenditure on research and development by small and medium-sized enterprises) is amended in accordance with the following provisions of this Part of this Schedule.

*Required minimum aggregate expenditure: reduction from £25,000 to £10,000* 30

- 2 (1) Paragraph 1 (entitlement to R&D tax relief) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(b) (requirement for minimum aggregate expenditure of £25,000 or time apportioned part of that amount) in sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) for “£25,000” substitute “£10,000”.

*Required minimum aggregate expenditure: inclusion of new class of expenditure*

- 3 (1) Paragraph 1 is also amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(b) (requirement for minimum aggregate expenditure) –
- (a) for “paragraph 3) and” substitute “paragraph 3),”; and 5
- (b) after “Finance Act 2002)” insert “and its qualifying additional SME expenditure (as defined in paragraph 10B of that Schedule)”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (3A) (meaning of “deductible” in relation to qualifying sub-contracted R&D expenditure) –
- (a) after “(1)(b)” insert “, each of the following – 10
- (a);
- (b) after “Finance Act 2002)” insert “, and”; and
- (c) after the paragraph (a) so formed, insert the following paragraph –
- “(b) a company’s qualifying additional SME expenditure (as defined in paragraph 10B of that Schedule),”. 15

*Qualifying R&D expenditure: expenditure on externally provided workers*

- 4 In paragraph 3 (qualifying R&D expenditure) for sub-paragraph (4) (the third condition, that the expenditure is incurred on staffing costs or consumable stores or is qualifying expenditure on sub-contracted research and development) substitute – 20
- “(4) The third condition is that the expenditure –
- (a) is incurred on staffing costs (see paragraph 5),
- (b) is incurred on consumable stores (see paragraph 6),
- (c) is qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers (see paragraphs 8A to 8E), or 25
- (d) is qualifying expenditure on sub-contracted research and development (see paragraphs 9 to 12).”.

*Staffing costs: persons partly engaged directly and actively in relevant R&D*

- 5 (1) In paragraph 5 (staffing costs) sub-paragraph (3) (person partly engaged in relevant research and development) is amended as follows. 30
- (2) In the opening words, omit “the following rules apply”.
- (3) Omit paragraphs (a) and (b) (person spending less than 20% or more than 80% of total working time on relevant research and development).
- (4) In paragraph (c), omit “in any other case,”.

*Qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers* 35

- 6 After paragraph 8 (subsidised expenditure) insert –
- “*Qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers*
- 8A (1) The provisions of paragraphs 8C to 8E have effect for determining the amount of the qualifying expenditure of a company (“the company”) on externally provided workers. 40

- (2) The provisions of sub-paragraphs (4) to (6) have effect for determining how much of any such expenditure is attributable to relevant research and development.
- (3) For the purposes of this Schedule the company incurs expenditure on externally provided workers if it makes a payment (a “staff provision payment”) to another person (the “staff provider”) in respect of the supply to the company, by or through the staff provider, of the services of any externally provided workers. 5
- (4) Qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers is attributable to relevant research and development if the externally provided workers are directly and actively engaged in such research and development. 10
- (5) In the case of any externally provided worker partly engaged directly and actively in relevant research and development, an appropriate proportion of the qualifying expenditure relating to him is treated as attributable to the relevant research and development. 15
- (6) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (4) and (5) persons who provide services, such as secretarial or administrative services, in support of activities carried on by others, are not, by virtue of providing those services, to be treated as themselves directly and actively engaged in those activities. 20

*Meaning of “externally provided worker”*

- 8B For the purposes of this Schedule a person is an “externally provided worker” in relation to the company if the following conditions are satisfied – 25
- (a) he is an individual,
- (b) he is not a director or employee of the company,
- (c) he personally provides, or is under an obligation personally to provide, services to the company, 30
- (d) he is subject to (or to the right of) supervision, direction or control by the company as to the manner in which those services are provided,
- (e) his services are supplied to the company by or through the staff provider (whether or not he is a director or employee of the staff provider or of any other person), 35
- (f) he provides, or is under an obligation to provide, those services personally to the company under the terms of a contract between him and the staff provider,
- (g) the provision of those services does not constitute the carrying on of activities contracted out by the company. 40

*Treatment of expenditure where company and staff provider are connected persons*

- 8C (1) Where –
- (a) the company and the staff provider are connected persons, and 45
- (b) in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice –

- 
- (i) the whole of the staff provision payment has been brought into account in determining the staff provider's profit or loss for a relevant period, and
- (ii) all of the staff provider's relevant expenditure has been so brought into account, 5
- the whole of the payment (up to the amount of the staff provider's relevant expenditure) is qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) – 10
- (a) references to the “relevant expenditure” of the staff provider are to expenditure that –
- (i) is incurred by the staff provider in providing for the company the externally provided workers to which the staff provision payment relates,
- (ii) is not of a capital nature, and 15
- (iii) is incurred on staffing costs or agency workers' remuneration;
- (b) a “relevant period” means a period –
- (i) for which accounts are drawn up for the staff provider, and 20
- (ii) that ends not more than twelve months after the end of the company's period of account in which the staff provision payment is, in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice, brought into account in determining the company's profit or loss. 25
- (3) Paragraph 5 (staffing costs) applies for the purposes of determining whether the staff provider's expenditure meets the requirements of sub-paragraph (2)(a)(iii) so far as relating to staffing costs. 30
- For this purpose the references in that paragraph to a company shall be read as references to the staff provider.
- (4) For the purposes of this Schedule “agency workers' remuneration”, in the case of any person who is an externally provided worker in relation to the company, means remuneration receivable by the worker under or in consequence of the contract mentioned in paragraph 8B(f) – 35
- (a) that does not constitute employment income of the worker apart from Chapter 7 of Part 2 of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1) (application of provisions to agency workers), and 40
- (b) that is not, apart from section 134 of the Taxes Act 1988 (workers supplied by agencies), chargeable to income tax under Schedule E.
- (5) Any apportionment of expenditure of the company or the staff provider necessary for the purposes of this paragraph shall be made on a just and reasonable basis. 45



*Election for connected persons treatment*

- 8D (1) The company and the staff provider may in any case jointly elect that paragraph 8C shall apply to the staff provision payments made by the company to the staff provider.
- (2) Any such election must be made in relation to all staff provision payments paid under the same contract or arrangement. 5
- (3) The election must be made by notice in writing given to the Inland Revenue.
- (4) The notice must be given before the end of the period of two years beginning with the end of the company’s accounting period in which the contract or other arrangement is entered into. 10
- (5) An election under this paragraph, once made, is irrevocable.

*Treatment of staff provision payment in other cases*

- 8E Where –
- (a) the company makes a staff provision payment, 15
- (b) the company and the staff provider are not connected persons, and
- (c) no election is made under paragraph 8D,  
65% of the amount of the staff provision payment is treated as qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers.”. 20

*Qualifying expenditure on sub-contracted R&D: externally provided workers*

- 7 (1) Paragraph 10 (treatment of qualifying expenditure on sub-contracted research and development where company and sub-contractor are connected persons) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (2)(a) (relevant expenditure of sub-contractor) in sub-paragraph (iii) after “on consumable stores” insert “or is qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers”. 25
- (3) For sub-paragraph (3) (which applies paragraphs 5 and 8) substitute –
- “(3) For the purpose of determining whether the sub-contractor’s expenditure meets the requirements of sub-paragraph (2)(a)(iii) and (iv), the following provisions apply –
- (a) paragraph 5 (staffing costs),
- (b) paragraph 8 (subsidised expenditure), and
- (c) paragraphs 8A to 8E (qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers), 30
- but for that purpose the references in those paragraphs to a company shall be read as references to the sub-contractor.”. 35

## PART 2

## LARGE COMPANIES: PART 1 OF SCHEDULE 12 TO FINANCE ACT 2002

*Introductory*

- 8 Part 1 of Schedule 12 to the Finance Act 2002 (c. 23) (entitlement to R&D relief: large companies) is amended in accordance with the following provisions of this Part of this Schedule. 5

*Required minimum aggregate expenditure: reduction from £25,000 to £10,000*

- 9 (1) Paragraph 1 (entitlement to relief under Part 1 of the Schedule) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(b) (requirement for minimum qualifying R&D expenditure of £25,000 or time apportioned part of that amount) in sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) for “£25,000” substitute “£10,000”. 10

*Qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers*

- 10 In paragraph 4 (qualifying expenditure on direct research and development) for sub-paragraph (3) (the second condition, that the expenditure is incurred on staffing costs or consumable stores) substitute – 15
- “(3) The second condition is that the expenditure –
- (a) is incurred on staffing costs,
- (b) is incurred on consumable stores, or
- (c) is qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers.”. 20

## PART 3

## WORK SUB-CONTRACTED TO SMES: PART 2 OF SCHEDULE 12 TO FINANCE ACT 2002

*Introductory*

- 11 Part 2 of Schedule 12 to the Finance Act 2002 (entitlement to relief for R&D expenditure: work sub-contracted to small or medium-sized enterprise) is amended in accordance with the following provisions of this Part of this Schedule. 25

*Required minimum aggregate expenditure: reduction from £25,000 to £10,000*

- 12 (1) Paragraph 7 (entitlement to relief under Part 2 of the Schedule) is amended as follows. 30
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(b) (requirement for minimum R&D expenditure of £25,000 or time apportioned part of that amount) in sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) for “£25,000” substitute “£10,000”.

*Required minimum aggregate expenditure: inclusion of new class of expenditure* 35

- 13 (1) Paragraph 7 is also amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (2) (meaning of “aggregate R&D expenditure”) omit the

word “and” immediately preceding paragraph (b) and at the end of that paragraph add “, and

- (c) its qualifying additional SME expenditure (see paragraph 10B).”.

*R&D directly undertaken by SME: qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers* 5

14 In paragraph 9 (expenditure on research and development directly undertaken by SME) for sub-paragraph (2) (the second condition, that the expenditure must be incurred on staffing costs or consumable stores) substitute –

- “(2) The second condition is that the expenditure – 10
  - (a) is incurred on staffing costs,
  - (b) is incurred on consumable stores, or
  - (c) is qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers.”.

PART 4 15

ENTITLEMENT OF SME TO CERTAIN RELIEF AVAILABLE TO LARGE COMPANIES

*Insertion of Part 2A of Schedule 12 to the Finance Act 2002*

15 After Part 2 of Schedule 12 to the Finance Act 2002 (c. 23) (entitlement to relief for R&D expenditure: work sub-contracted to small or medium-sized enterprise) insert the following Part – 20

“PART 2A

ENTITLEMENT OF SME TO ADDITIONAL RELIEF AVAILABLE TO LARGE COMPANIES

*Entitlement to relief under this Part*

10A (1) A company (“the SME”) is entitled to tax relief under this Part for an accounting period if – 25

- (a) it qualifies as a small or medium-sized enterprise in that period, and
- (b) its aggregate R&D expenditure for that period is not less than –
  - (i) £10,000, if the accounting period is a period of 12 months, or 30
  - (ii) such amount as bears to £10,000 the same proportion as the accounting period bears to 12 months.

(2) Sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of paragraph 7 (meaning of “aggregate R&D expenditure” and “for an accounting period”) apply for the purposes of this paragraph as they apply for the purposes of that paragraph. 35

(3) Any relief to which a company is entitled under this Part for an accounting period is in addition to any relief to which it may be entitled under – 40

- (a) Schedule 20 to the Finance Act 2000, or
- (b) Part 2 of this Schedule.

*Qualifying additional SME expenditure*

- 10B For the purposes of this Schedule, the SME's "qualifying additional SME expenditure" is any expenditure which – 5
- (a) had the SME been a large company throughout the accounting period in question, would have been qualifying R&D expenditure of that company (see paragraph 3), but
  - (b) is not qualifying R&D expenditure for the purposes of Schedule 20 to the Finance Act 2000 (see paragraph 3 of that Schedule) in the case of the SME by reason only of paragraph 3(7) or 10(2)(a)(iv) of that Schedule (subsidised expenditure, within the meaning given by paragraph 8 of that Schedule); and 10
  - (c) is not qualifying sub-contracted R&D expenditure for the purposes of this Schedule (see paragraph 8) in the case of the SME." 15

PART 5

SUPPLEMENTARY: AMENDMENTS TO PARTS 3 TO 6 OF SCHEDULE 12 TO FINANCE ACT 2002 20

*Introductory*

- 16 Parts 3 to 6 of Schedule 12 to the Finance Act 2002 (c. 23) are amended in accordance with the following provisions of this Part of this Schedule.

*Deduction in computing profits of trade*

- 17 (1) Paragraph 11 is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) (application of paragraph) for "Part 1 or 2" substitute "Part 1, 2 or 2A".
  - (3) In sub-paragraph (3) (meaning of "qualifying expenditure") omit the word "and" immediately preceding paragraph (b) and at the end of that paragraph insert "and" 30
    - (c) in the case of relief under Part 2A, qualifying additional SME expenditure (see paragraph 10B)." 30

*Refunds of contributions to independent research and development*

- 18 In paragraph 15(1) (refunds of certain payments) omit the word "or" immediately preceding paragraph (c) and at the end of that paragraph insert "or" 35
- (d) any expenditure which is qualifying additional SME expenditure,"

*Meaning of “qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers”*

- 19 (1) Paragraph 17 (which applies certain definitions from Schedule 20 to the Finance Act 2000 (c. 17)) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit the word “and” immediately preceding paragraph (c).
- (3) At the end of paragraph (c) add “; and” 5
- (d) paragraphs 8A to 8E (qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers).”.
- (4) The heading to the paragraph accordingly becomes –
- “*Meaning of “relevant research and development”, “staffing costs”, “consumable stores” and “qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers”*”.
- 10

PART 6

EXPENDITURE ON VACCINE RESEARCH ETC: SCHEDULE 13 TO FINANCE ACT 2002

*Introductory*

- 20 Schedule 13 to the Finance Act 2002 (c. 23) (tax relief for expenditure on vaccine research etc) is amended in accordance with the following provisions of this Part of this Schedule. 15

*Reduction of required qualifying expenditure from £25,000 to £10,000*

- 21 (1) Paragraph 1 (entitlement to relief under the Schedule) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) (requirement for minimum qualifying expenditure of £25,000 or time apportioned part of that amount) in paragraphs (a) and (b) for “£25,000” substitute “£10,000”. 20

*Direct research and development: qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers*

- 22 In paragraph 3 (qualifying expenditure on direct research and development) for sub-paragraph (5) (the fourth condition, that the expenditure is incurred on staffing costs or consumable stores) substitute – 25
- “(5) The fourth condition is that the expenditure –
- (a) is incurred on staffing costs,
- (b) is incurred on consumable stores, or
- (c) is qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers.”. 30

*Meaning of “qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers”*

- 23 (1) Paragraph 5(3) (which applies certain definitions in Schedule 20 to the Finance Act 2000) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit the word “and” immediately preceding paragraph (d). 35
- (3) In paragraph (d), for “(subsidised expenditure),” substitute “(subsidised expenditure); and”.

- (4) After paragraph (d) insert the following paragraph –  
 “(e) paragraphs 8A to 8E (qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers).”

- (5) The heading to paragraph 5 accordingly becomes –

*“Meaning of “relevant R&D”, “small or medium-sized enterprise”, “staffing costs”, “consumable stores”, “subsidised” and “qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers”.* 5

*Relevant expenditure of sub-contractor: qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers*

- 24 In paragraph 9 (relevant expenditure of sub-contractor) for sub-paragraph (3) (the second condition, that the expenditure must be incurred on staffing costs or consumable stores) substitute – 10

- “(3) The second condition is that the expenditure –  
 (a) is incurred on staffing costs,  
 (b) is incurred on consumable stores, or  
 (c) is qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers. 15

In applying for the purposes of this sub-paragraph (by virtue of paragraph 5 above) –

- (a) paragraph 5 of Schedule 20 to the Finance Act 2000 (meaning of “staffing costs”), or  
 (b) paragraphs 8A to 8E of that Schedule (qualifying expenditure on externally provided workers), 20

the references to the company shall be read as references to the sub-contractor.”.

SCHEDULE 32

Section 168

TONNAGE TAX: RESTRICTIONS ON CAPITAL ALLOWANCES FOR LESSORS OF SHIPS 25

*The ring fence: amendments to the provisions about capital allowances and ship leasing*

- 1 (1) In Schedule 22 to the Finance Act 2000 (c. 17) (tonnage tax), Part 10 (the ring fence: capital allowances: ship leasing) is amended as follows.

- (2) Omit the word “finance” from the expression “finance lease” in paragraphs 89(1), 90(1), 92(1), 93(1), 94(1), 98(1)(a) and 99(1)(a). 30

- (3) At the end of sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 89 (introduction to Part 10) insert –

“This is subject to paragraph 89A (exception for ordinary charters).”.

- (4) For sub-paragraph (2) of that paragraph substitute –

- “(2) In this Part of this Schedule “lease” means any arrangements that provide for a ship to be leased or otherwise made available by a person (“the lessor”) to another person (“the lessee”).”.
- 35

(5) After that paragraph insert –

*“Quantitative restrictions not to apply to ordinary charters*

89A (1) Paragraph 94 to 102, and paragraph 89(1) so far as relating to those paragraphs, do not apply in the following cases.

(2) The first case is where the ship is chartered out by a person who is responsible – 5

(a) for the operation of the ship, including the appointment of the master and those members of the crew engaged in navigation, throughout the period of the charter, and

(b) for defraying all expenses in connection with the ship throughout that period, or substantially all such expenses other than those directly incidental to a particular voyage or to the employment of the ship during that period. 10

For the purposes of this sub-paragraph a person is “responsible” if he is responsible as principal or if he appoints another person, other than the lessee or a person connected with the lessee, to be responsible in his place. 15

(3) The second case is where –

(a) the ship is chartered out by a person acting in the course of a trade that consists of, or to a significant extent includes, operating ships, and 20

(b) the conditions in sub-paragraph (4) are met.

(4) Those conditions are –

(a) that the period of the charter does not exceed seven years, and there is no provision or agreement under which it could be extended beyond seven years; 25

(b) that the period of the charter, together with any other periods in the same ten years during which the ship is chartered out to the lessee or a person connected with him, does not exceed seven years in total; 30

(c) that there are no arrangements under which the lessee or a person connected with him may acquire the ship, whether directly or indirectly, from the lessor.

In paragraph (b) “the same ten years” means any period of ten years that includes the period of the charter mentioned in that paragraph. 35

(5) References in this paragraph to the period of a charter are to the term specified in the lease or, if longer, the actual period during which the ship is chartered.

(6) Section 839 of the Taxes Act 1988 (connected persons) applies for the purposes of this paragraph.”. 40

*Consequential amendments*

2 (1) In paragraph 41(4) of that Schedule (the requirement not to enter into tax avoidance arrangement: exemption for finance leases) –

(a) in the first sentence omit “finance”; 45

- (b) for the second sentence substitute –  
 “In this sub-paragraph “lease”, and “lessor” in relation to a lease, have the meaning given by paragraph 89(2).”.
- (2) In paragraph 147 (index of defined expressions) –
- (a) omit the entry for “finance lease (and lessor and lessee) (in Part X)”; 5
- (b) insert at the appropriate place –  
 “lease (and lessor and lessee) (in Part X) paragraph 89(2)”.

*Commencement and temporary provision*

- 3 (1) Subject to paragraph 4(2), the amendments made by paragraphs 1 and 2 apply in relation to any lease entered into on or after 19th December 2002. 10
- (2) In sub-paragraph (4)(b) of the paragraph 89A inserted by paragraph 1(5) above, the reference to any other periods during which the ship is chartered out does not include any period during which it is chartered out under a lease entered into before 19th December 2002.
- 4 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to any lease entered into on or after 19th December 2002 and before 16 April 2003. 15
- (2) Part 10 of the Schedule 22 to the Finance Act 2000 (c. 17) has effect as if, instead of the paragraph inserted after paragraph 89 by paragraph 1(5) above, the following paragraph were inserted –

*“Exception for ordinary charters”* 20

89A (1) Paragraph 89(1), and the provisions of this Part of this Schedule listed there, do not apply in the following cases.

- (2) The first case is where the ship is chartered out by a person who is responsible –
- (a) for the operation of the ship, including the appointment of the master and those members of the crew engaged in navigation, throughout the period of the charter, and 25
- (b) for defraying all expenses in connection with the ship throughout that period, or substantially all such expenses other than those directly incidental to a particular voyage or to the employment of the ship during that period. 30

For the purposes of this sub-paragraph a person is “responsible” if he is responsible as principal or if he appoints another person, other than the lessee or a person connected with the lessee, to be responsible in his place. 35

- (3) The second case is where –
- (a) the ship is chartered out to another person (“the charterer”) because of short-term over-capacity,
- (b) the person chartering out the ship does so in the course of a trade that consists of or includes operating ships, and 40
- (c) the conditions in sub-paragraph (4) are met.
- (4) Those conditions are –
- (a) that the period of the charter does not exceed three years, and there is no provision or agreement under which it could be extended beyond three years; 45



- (b) that the period of the charter, together with any other periods in the same five years during which the ship is chartered out to the charterer or a person connected with him, does not exceed three years in total;
    - (c) that neither the charterer nor any person connected with him has an option to purchase the ship. 5
  - (5) In sub-paragraph (4)(b) –
    - (a) the reference to any other periods during which the ship is chartered out does not include any period during which it is chartered out under a lease entered into before 19th December 2002; 10
    - (b) “the same five years” means any period of five years that includes the period of the charter mentioned in that sub-paragraph.
  - (6) References in this paragraph to the period of a charter are to the term specified in the lease or, if longer, the actual period during which the ship is chartered. 15
  - (7) Section 839 of the Taxes Act 1988 (connected persons) applies for the purposes of this paragraph.”.
- (3) Paragraph 93(1) of that Schedule (certificates required to support claim by lessor) has effect as if after paragraph (a) there were inserted – 20
  - “(aa) that the lease is such that, by virtue of paragraph 89A (exception for ordinary charters), paragraph 89(1) does not apply, or”.
- 5 In paragraphs 3 and 4 “lease” means any arrangements that provide for a ship to be leased or otherwise made available by one person to another. 25

## SCHEDULE 33

Section 169

### INSURANCE COMPANIES

#### *Case I profits*

- 1 (1) For section 82 of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26) (calculation of profits of insurance company in respect of life assurance business when computed in accordance with provisions applicable to Case I of Schedule D) substitute – 30
  - “82 Calculation of profits: bonuses etc**
  - (1) This section and sections 82A and 82B below have effect where the profits of an insurance company in respect of its life assurance business are, for the purposes of the Taxes Act 1988, computed in accordance with the provisions of that Act applicable to Case I of Schedule D. 35
  - (2) Any amounts which are allocated to policy holders or annuitants in respect of a period of account are allowed as a deduction in calculating the profits for the period of account. 40
  - (3) For the purposes of subsection (2) above, an amount is allocated to policy holders or annuitants if (but only if) –

- (a) bonus payments are made to them,
  - (b) reversionary bonuses are declared in their favour, or
  - (c) a reduction is made in the premiums payable by them.
- (4) Where an amount is allocated to policy holders or annuitants for the purposes of subsection (2) above, the amount of the allocation is – 5
- (a) in the case of bonus payments, the amount of the payments,
  - (b) in the case of declared reversionary bonuses, the amount of the liabilities assumed by the company in consequence of the declaration, and
  - (c) in the case of a reduction in premiums, the amount of the liabilities assumed by the company in consequence of the reduction. 10

### 82A Calculation of profits: policy holders' tax

- (1) Tax expended on behalf of policy holders or annuitants is allowed as a deduction in calculating the profits to the extent (but only to the extent) that regulations made by the Treasury so provide. 15
- (2) The regulations may include provision for tax so expended to be so allowed even if it is not brought into account.
- (3) The regulations – 20
- (a) may make different provision for different cases, and
  - (b) may include provision having effect in relation to periods of account during which they are made.

### 82B Unappropriated surplus on valuation

- (1) This section applies in relation to a period of account of an insurance company (“the period of account in question”) where – 25
- (a) at the end of the period of account in question the company has an unappropriated surplus on valuation as shown in the return deposited with the Financial Services Authority under section 9.6 of the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers) (an “unappropriated surplus”), and 30
  - (b) the company has not made an election in accordance with Rule 4.1(6) of the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers) covering the period of account in question.
- (2) Where the company did not have an unappropriated surplus at the end of the period of account immediately preceding the period of account in question, so much of the unappropriated surplus at the end of the period of account in question as is required to meet the duty of fairness is allowed as a deduction in calculating the profits for the period of account in question. 35
- (3) Where the company did have an unappropriated surplus at the end of that immediately preceding period of account – 40
- (a) if so much of the unappropriated surplus at the end of the period of account in question as is required to meet the duty of fairness exceeds so much of the unappropriated surplus at the end of that immediately preceding period of account as was required to meet that duty, the excess is allowed as a 45

- deduction in calculating the profits for the period of account in question, but
- (b) if so much of the unappropriated surplus at the end of that immediately preceding period of account as was required to meet the duty of fairness exceeds so much of the unappropriated surplus at the end of the period of account in question as is required to meet that duty, the excess is to be taken into account as a receipt of the period of account in question. 5
- (4) In arriving for the purposes of this section at the amount of the unappropriated surplus which is or was required to meet the duty of fairness there is to be deducted the aggregate of amounts which— 10
- (a) for periods of account ending before 14th March 1989 (and the first notional period of account, within the meaning of section 82 above as originally enacted) have been excluded, by virtue of section 433 of the Taxes Act 1988, as being reserved for policy holders or annuitants, and 15
- (b) have not before that date either been allocated to or expended on behalf of policy holders or annuitants or been treated as profits of an accounting period on ceasing to be so reserved. 20
- (5) References in this section to the company’s duty of fairness are to the company’s duty to treat its policy holders and annuitants fairly with regard to terminal bonuses.”
- (2) In section 83A(1) of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26) (meaning of “brought into account”), for “83” substitute “82A”. 25
- (3) In section 436(3)(a) of the Taxes Act 1988 (pension business: separate charge on profits)—
- (a) for “82 and 83” substitute “82 and 82B to 83AB”, and
- (b) omit the words after “modifications”.
- (4) In sections 439B(3)(a) and 441(4)(a) of the Taxes Act 1988 (life reinsurance business and overseas life insurance business: separate charge on profits)— 30
- (a) for “82(1), (2) and (4) and 83” substitute “82 and 82B to 83AB”, and
- (b) omit “and in particular with the omission of the words “and any amounts of tax which are expended on behalf of” in section 82(1)(a)”.
- (5) This paragraph has effect for periods of account beginning on or after 1st January 2003. 35
- (6) In relation to the first period of account of an insurance company beginning on or after that date, section 82B of the Finance Act 1989 (inserted by subparagraph (1)) applies as if the references in it to so much of the unappropriated surplus at the end of the immediately preceding period of account as was required to meet the company’s duty of fairness were to any amount included in the closing liabilities of the period of account by virtue of section 82(1)(b) of that Act as originally enacted. 40
- 2 (1) Section 83 of the Finance Act 1989 (receipts etc to be taken into account in Case I computations) is amended as follows. 45

## (2) For subsection (2) substitute –

“(2) There shall be taken into account as receipts of a period of account amounts (so far as referable to that business) brought into account for the period of account as –

- (a) investment income receivable before deduction of tax, 5
- (b) an increase in the value of non-linked assets,
- (c) an increase in the value of linked assets, or
- (d) other income;

and if amounts (so far as so referable) are brought into account for a period of account as a decrease in the value of non-linked assets or a decrease in the value of linked assets they shall be taken into account as an expense of the period of account. 10

(2A) But subsection (2) above does not require to be taken into account as receipts of a period of account so much of the amounts brought into account as mentioned paragraphs (a) to (d) of that subsection for the period of account as – 15

- (a) is entirely notional because an amount corresponding to it would fall to be brought into account as an expense (for that or any other period of account),
- (b) is exempted by section 444AC(2) of the Taxes Act 1988 (transfers of business), or 20
- (c) consists of interest paid under section 826 of the Taxes Act 1988 (interest on tax overpaid) in respect of a repayment or payment relating to an accounting period of the company ending before 1st July 1999; 25

but, subject to that, the whole of the amounts so brought into account for a period of account shall be taken into account as receipts of the period of account.

(2B) If any assets of the company’s long-term insurance fund are transferred by the company in a period of account so that they cease to be assets of that fund, but the transfer is not brought into account as part of total expenditure for the period of account, the fair value of the assets at the time of the transfer shall be deemed to be brought into account for the period of account as an increase in the value of the assets of that fund unless the assets are excluded from this subsection by – 30

- (a) subsection (2C) or (2D) below, or
- (b) section 444AD of the Taxes Act 1988 (transfers of business).

(2C) Assets transferred to discharge liabilities in respect of deposits received from reinsurers or arising out of insurance operations, debenture loans or amounts borrowed from credit institutions are included in subsection (2B) above only if the deposits, loans or amounts borrowed – 40

- (a) were brought into account for the period of account, but
- (b) were not taken into account as receipts of the period of account under subsection (2) above. 45

(2D) Assets are excluded from subsection (2B) above if they are transferred for at least their fair value and the consideration for their

- transfer, when received, forms part of the company's long-term insurance fund.”.
- (3) In subsection (3) –
- (a) for “that business in a case where an amount is” substitute “its life assurance business in a case where assets are”, 5
  - (b) after “taken into account” insert “under subsection (2) above”, and
  - (c) for “that fund within subsection (2)(b) above” substitute “the long-term insurance fund”.
- (4) In subsection (4), for paragraph (c) substitute –
- “(c) represents so much of the proceeds of the disposal of an asset of the long-term insurance fund as does not exceed its fair value or an asset acquired for at least its fair value which is added to that fund.”. 10
- (5) In subsection (5), omit paragraph (b) and the word “but” before it.
- (6) In subsection (6)(c), omit “unless the reinsurer under the contract falls within section 439A of the Taxes Act 1988 (pure reinsurance)”. 15
- (7) Subsection (8) is amended as follows.
- (8) After the definition of “demutualisation” insert –
- ““fair value”, in relation to assets, means the amount which would be obtained from an independent person purchasing them or, if the assets are money, its amount;”. 20
- (9) In the definition of “total reinsurance”, omit “before the making of the contract of reinsurance (or, in a case where there are two or more contracts of reinsurance, the last of them)”.
- (10) In the sidenote, for “brought” substitute “taken”. 25
- (11) Sub-paragraph (6) has effect in relation to contracts of reinsurance made on or after 9th April 2003; and sub-paragraph (9) has effect in relation to reinsurance effected by a single contract made on or after that date or by two or more contracts each of which is made on or after that day.
- (12) But, subject to that, this paragraph has effect for periods of account beginning on or after 1st January 2003. 30
- 3 (1) In the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26), after section 83 insert –
- “83ZA Contingent loans**
- (1) For the purposes of this section a contingent loan is made to an insurance company if – 35
- (a) a deposit is received by the company from a reinsurer or arises out of insurance operations of the company,
  - (b) a debenture loan is made to the company, or
  - (c) an amount is borrowed by the company from a credit institution, 40
- and the deposit, debenture loan or amount borrowed is taken into account as a receipt of the company under section 83(2) above.
- (2) For the purposes of this section the time when a contingent loan is made to an insurance company is the time when the assets constituting the deposit, debenture loan or amount borrowed are received by the company. 45

- (3) For the purposes of this section an insurance company has unrepaid contingent loan liabilities at any time if –
- (a) one or more contingent loans have been made to the company at or before that time, and
  - (b) amounts will or may at some later time become repayable by the company in respect of the contingent loan or contingent loans. 5
- (4) Where, at the end of the period of account of an insurance company (“the period of account in question”), the company has unrepaid contingent loan liabilities – 10
- (a) subsection (5) below applies if the company did not have unrepaid contingent loan liabilities at the end of the period of account immediately preceding the period of account in question, and
  - (b) subsection (6) below applies if it did. 15
- (5) Where this subsection applies, the appropriate amount for the period of account in question is allowed as a deduction in calculating the profits of the company for the period of account in question.
- (6) Where this subsection applies –
- (a) if the appropriate amount for the period of account in question exceeds the appropriate amount for the immediately preceding period of account, the excess is allowed as a deduction in calculating the profits for the period of account in question, but 20
  - (b) if the appropriate amount for the immediately preceding period of account exceeds the appropriate amount for the period of account in question, the excess is to be taken into account as a receipt of the period of account in question. 25
- (7) For the purposes of subsections (5) and (6) above the appropriate amount for a period of account is the amount of the unrepaid contingent loan liabilities at the end of the period of account reduced (but not below nil) by the aggregate of – 30
- (a) any relevant net transfers to shareholders, and
  - (b) any deficiencies of assets over liabilities received on relevant transferred business. 35
- (8) In subsection (7)(a) above “relevant net transfers to shareholders” means the aggregate of the positive amounts brought into account as transfers to non-technical account for –
- (a) the period of account,
  - (b) the period of account in which the relevant contingent loan was made to the company, and 40
  - (c) any period of account falling between the periods of account mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) above,
- as reduced in accordance with subsection (9) below.
- (9) The reduction to be made from the positive amount brought into account as a transfer to non-technical account for any of the periods of account mentioned in subsection (8) above is so much of the 45

- positive amount as does not exceed 12% of the amount allocated to policy holders as bonuses in relation to the period of account.
- (10) In subsection (7)(b) above “deficiencies of assets over liabilities received on relevant transferred business” means any amount by which, on an insurance business transfer scheme having effect to transfer long-term business from a person (“the transferor”) to the company which has taken place since the time when the relevant contingent loan was made to the company – 5
- (a) the amount of the liabilities to policy holders and annuitants transferred to the company, exceeded 10
  - (b) the element of the company’s line 15 figure representing the transferor’s long-term insurance fund.
- (11) In subsections (8) and (10) above “the relevant contingent loan” means – 15
- (a) if amounts will or may at some later time become repayable by the company in respect of only one contingent loan, that contingent loan, and 15
  - (b) if amounts will or may at some later time become repayable by the company in respect of more than one contingent loan, whichever of those contingent loans was made to the company first. 20
- (12) In subsection (10)(b) above “the element of the company’s line 15 figure representing the transferor’s long-term insurance fund” means so much of the amount brought into account by the company as other income in the period of account in which the transfer took place as represents the assets transferred to the company. 25
- (13) Where in a period of account of an insurance company –
- (a) an amount becomes repayable under a contingent loan made to the company, and
  - (b) the amount repayable is brought into account as other expenses for the period of account, 30
- so much of the amount repayable as does not exceed the amount specified in subsection (14) below is allowed as a deduction in calculating the profits of the company for the period of account.
- (14) The amount referred to in subsection (13) above is the amount arrived at by deducting from the amount taken into account as a receipt of the company under section 83(2) above in relation to the contingent loan the aggregate of any amounts which – 35
- (a) have become repayable in respect of the contingent loan in any earlier period of account, and 40
  - (b) have been allowed as a deduction in calculating the profits of the company for any such period.”.
- (2) In paragraph 2 of Schedule 11 to the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) (loan relationships: special provisions for insurers), after sub-paragraph (2) insert – 45
- “(2A) Where an insurance company stands in the position of a debtor as respects a debt under a contingent loan made to the company (within the meaning of section 83ZA(1) of the Finance Act 1989),

- the debt is to be regarded for the purposes of this Chapter as not arising from a transaction for the lending of money.”.
- (3) This paragraph has effect in relation to contingent loans made to an insurance company in a period of account beginning on or after 1st January 2003. 5
- 4 (1) In section 83AA of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26) (amounts added to long-term insurance fund of a company in excess of company’s loss), omit—
- (a) subsections (3) to (5),
  - (b) subsection (6)(a),
  - (c) subsection (7)(b) and the word “and” before it, and 10
  - (d) in subsection (10), the definitions of “the relevant accounting period” and “the transferor company”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect for periods of account beginning on or after 1st January 2003.
- 5 (1) In section 83AB(1)(c) of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26) (treatment of surplus where there is a subsequent transfer of business from company etc)— 15
- (a) omit sub-paragraph (i), and
  - (b) in sub-paragraph (ii), for “that section” substitute “section 83AA above”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect for periods of account beginning on or after 1st January 2003. 20
- 6 (1) In section 88 of the Finance Act 1989 (corporation tax: policy holders’ share of profits), after subsection (3) insert—
- “(3A) In subsection (3) above “income and gains of the company’s life assurance business” means the aggregate of— 25
- (a) income and chargeable gains referable to the company’s basic life assurance and general annuity business, and
  - (b) profits of the company chargeable under Case VI of Schedule D under section 436, 439B and 441 of the Taxes Act 1988 (pension business, life reinsurance business and overseas life assurance business).”.
- 30
- (2) Section 89 of that Act (meaning of policy holders’ share of profits) is amended as follows.
- (3) In subsection (1), for the words after “references to” substitute— 35
- “(a) in a case where there are no Case I profits of the company for the period in respect of its life assurance business, the amount of the relevant profits, and
  - (b) in any other case, the amount arrived at in accordance with subsection (1A) below.”.
- (4) After that subsection insert— 40
- “(1A) An amount is arrived at in accordance with this subsection by—
- (a) deducting from any profits of the company for the period chargeable under Case VI of Schedule D under sections 436, 439B and 441 of the Taxes Act 1988 (as reduced by any losses under those sections and any charges on income referable to any category of business other than basic life assurance and general annuity business) so much of the Case I profits of the 45



- company for the period in respect of its life assurance business as does not exceed the amount of any profits of the company for the period so chargeable, and
- (b) deducting any remaining Case I profits of the company for the period in respect of its life assurance business from any BLAGAB profits of the company for the period. 5
- (1B) For the purposes of this section, the BLAGAB profits of a company for an accounting period are the income and chargeable gains referable to the company’s basic life assurance and general annuity business reduced by the aggregate amount of – 10
- (a) any non-trading deficit on the company’s loan relationships,
- (b) expenses of management falling to be deducted under section 76 of the Taxes Act 1988, and
- (c) charges on income,
- so far as referable to the company’s basic life assurance and general annuity business.”. 15
- (5) In subsection (2), for “subsection (1)” substitute “subsections (1) and (1A)”.
- (6) In section 76(2B) of the Taxes Act 1988 (expenses of management: relevant income) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “of the company’s life assurance business for that accounting period; and” substitute “for that accounting period which are referable to the company’s basic life assurance and general annuity business;”, and 20
- (b) after paragraph (b) insert “and
- “(c) profits of the company for that accounting period which are chargeable under Case VI of Schedule D under section 436, 439B or 441.”. 25
- (7) In –
- (a) section 434(6A)(b) of the Taxes Act 1988 (franked investment income), and 30
- (b) the second sentence of section 434A(3) of that Act (computation of losses and limitation on relief),
- for “88” substitute “89”.
- (8) In section 434A(1)(a)(i) of the Taxes Act 1988 (computation of losses and limitation on relief), for “for the period, otherwise than in accordance with those provisions, the profits or losses of the company’s life assurance business” substitute “, otherwise than in accordance with those provisions, the relevant profits (within the meaning of section 88(1) of the Finance Act 1989) of the company for the period”. 35
- (9) In section 437(1A) of the Taxes Act 1988 (general annuity business), for “profits for any accounting period of a company’s life assurance business” substitute “the relevant profits (within the meaning of section 88(1) of the Finance Act 1989) of an insurance company for any accounting period”. 40
- (10) In paragraph 16(1) of Schedule 7 to the Finance Act 1991 (c. 31) (transitional relief for old general annuity contracts), for “profits for any accounting period of an insurance company’s life assurance business” substitute “the relevant profits (within the meaning of section 88(1) of the Finance Act 1989) of an insurance company for any accounting period”. 45

- (11) Section 89(1B) of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26) (inserted by sub-paragraph (4)) has effect for the purposes of section 210A of the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12) (inserted by paragraph 13(1)) in relation to any accounting period of a company if it is necessary under that section to determine the company's BLAGAB profits for the period. 5
- (12) But, subject to that, this paragraph has effect for accounting periods ending on or after 9th April 2003.
- 7 (1) In section 89(7) of the Finance Act 1989 (which defines Case I profits for the purposes of determining the policy holders' share of relevant profits and the shareholders' share of income), in the definition of "Case I profits", insert at the end "and adjusted in respect of losses in accordance with section 76(2C) and (2D) of the Taxes Act 1988;". 10
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect for accounting periods beginning on or after 1st January 2003.
- (3) But section 76(2C) of the Taxes Act 1988, as it applies by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), has effect as if the reference in it to the amount which would fall, in the case of a company, to be set off under section 393 of that Act were to only so much of that amount as is attributable to losses incurred in the accounting period of the company in which 31st December 2002 is included or any later accounting period. 15  
20
- 8 (1) In section 76(1)(e) of the Taxes Act 1988 (expenses of management), for the words after paragraph (d) substitute –  
     “(e) expenses of management may be deducted for any accounting period only from so much of the income and gains of that accounting period referable to basic life assurance and general annuity business as remains after any deduction falling to be made by virtue of paragraph 4(2) of Schedule 11 to the Finance Act 1996 (non-trading deficits on loan relationships).” 25
- (2) In section 87(6)(b) of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26) (management expenses), omit “, disregarding section 76(1)(e) of that Act (as set out in subsection (2) above);”. 30
- (3) In paragraph 4 of Schedule 11 to the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) (non-trading deficits on loan relationships) –  
     (a) in sub-paragraph (2), omit “net” (in both places), and 35  
     (b) in sub-paragraph (16), omit the definition of “net income and gains”.
- (4) This paragraph has effect for accounting periods beginning on or after 1st January 2003 except those ending before 9th April 2003.
- 9 (1) Section 432E of the Taxes Act 1988 (apportionment of receipts brought into account: participating funds) is amended as follows. 40
- (2) In subsection (1), for “subsection (2)” substitute “subsections (2) and (2A)”.
- (3) In subsection (2), omit –  
     (a) paragraph (a), and  
     (b) in paragraph (b), the words “in any other case;”. 45
- (4) After subsection (2) insert –  
     “(2A) In a case where an amount is taken into account under subsection (2) of section 83 of the Finance Act 1989 by virtue of subsection (2B) of

that section, the amount determined under subsection (2) above is increased by –

$$\frac{\text{CAS}}{\text{AS}} \times \text{RP}$$

where –

- CAS and AS have the same meanings as in subsection (2) above; 5
- and
- RP is the amount taken into account under subsection (2) of section 83 of the Finance Act 1989 by virtue of subsection (2B) of that section.”.

- (5) This paragraph has effect for periods of account beginning on or after 1st January 2003; but sub-paragraph (3) does not have effect in relation to any periods of account ending before 9th April 2003. 10
- 10 (1) In section 804B(7) of the Taxes Act 1988 (double taxation relief: insurance companies carrying on more than one category of business) –
  - (a) in paragraph (a), for “that net amount which is referable by virtue of section 432E to that category” substitute “the investment income taken into account in that determination which would be referable to that category by virtue of section 432E if the investment income were the only amount included in the net amount”, and 15
  - (b) in paragraph (b), for “net amount” substitute “investment income”. 20
- (2) Section 804C of the Taxes Act 1988 (insurance companies: allocation of expenses etc in computations under Case I of Schedule D) is amended as follows.
- (3) In subsections (4) and (5), for “relevant amount” substitute “relevant income”. 25
- (4) For subsection (13) substitute –
  - “(13) For the purposes of the operation of this section in relation to any income or gain in respect of which credit falls to be allowed under any arrangements, the amount of the income or gain that is referable to a category of insurance business is the same fraction of the income and gain as the fraction of the foreign tax that is attributable to that category of business in accordance with section 804B.”. 30
- (5) This paragraph has effect for accounting periods beginning on or after 1st January 2003 except those ending before 9th April 2003.
- 11 (1) In section 76(2B)(b) of the Taxes Act 1988 (expenses of management), for “the franked investment income of, and foreign income dividends arising to, the company” substitute “distributions received by the company from companies resident in the United Kingdom”. 35
- (2) In section 434(3A) of the Taxes Act 1988 (franked investment income etc), for “held in connection with a company’s life assurance business” substitute “of a company’s long-term insurance fund”. 40
- (3) In section 441(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 (overseas life assurance business), omit “and section 441A” (in both places).
- (4) In section 89(2)(b) of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26) (policy holders’ share of profits), for “franked investment income arising in the period which is” substitute “distributions received from companies resident in the United Kingdom in the period which are”. 45

- (5) Apart from sub-paragraph (3), this paragraph has effect in relation to distributions on or after 9th April 2003.

*Rate of tax on policy holders' share of life assurance profits*

- 12 (1) The Finance Act 1989 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 88(1) (corporation tax rate on policy holders' share of relevant profits of companies carrying on life assurance business to be basic rate of income tax) – 5
- (a) omit “and section 88A”, and
- (b) for “basic” substitute “lower”.
- (3) Omit section 88A (cases where tax rate already is lower rate). 10
- (4) In section 89(1) (meaning of “policy holders' share of profits”) –
- (a) for “sections 88 and 88A” substitute “section 88”, and
- (b) omit “or, as the case may be, basic life assurance and general annuity business”.
- (5) The Taxes Act 1988 is amended as follows. 15
- (6) In section 438B(5) (income or gains arising from property investment LLP) –
- (a) omit paragraph (b) and the word “and” before it, and
- (b) for “section 88 of that Act” substitute “that section”.
- (7) Section 755A (controlled foreign companies: chargeable profits and creditable tax apportioned to company carrying on life assurance business) is amended as follows. 20
- (8) In subsection (3), for “88A(1)” substitute “88(1)”.
- (9) For subsection (11) substitute –
- “(11) For the purposes of this section the policy holders' part of any BLAGAB apportioned profit is – 25
- (a) where subsection (11A) below applies, the whole of that profit, and
- (b) in any other case, the relevant fraction (within the meaning of subsection (11B) below) of that profit.
- (11A) This subsection applies if – 30
- (a) the UK company's life assurance business is mutual business,
- (b) the policy holders' share of the UK company's relevant profits for the relevant accounting period is equal to all those profits, or
- (c) the policy holders' share of the UK company's relevant profits for the relevant accounting period is more than its BLAGAB profits for that period. 35
- (11B) The relevant fraction for the purposes of subsection (11)(b) above is the fraction arrived at by dividing – 40
- (a) the policy holders' share of the UK company's relevant profits for the relevant accounting period, by
- (b) the UK company's BLAGAB profits for that period.
- (11C) In subsections (11A) and (11B) above –

- (a) references to the policy holders' share of the UK company's share of the relevant profits are to be construed in accordance with sections 88(3) and 89 of the Finance Act 1989, and
  - (b) references to the UK company's BLAGAB profits are to be construed in accordance with section 89(1B) of that Act." 5
- (10) In paragraph 5(6)(b) of Schedule 28AA (provision not at arm's length), omit "or 88A".
- (11) This paragraph has effect for the financial year 2003 and subsequent financial years.

*Chargeable gains* 10

- 13 (1) In the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c.12), after section 210 insert—

**"210A Ring-fencing of losses**

- (1) Section 8(1) has effect in relation to insurance companies subject to the provisions of this section. 15
- (2) Non-BLAGAB allowable losses accruing to an insurance company are not allowable as a deduction from the policy holders' share of the BLAGAB chargeable gains accruing to the company.
- (3) BLAGAB allowable losses accruing to an insurance company are allowable as a deduction from non-BLAGAB chargeable gains accruing to the company as permitted by the following provisions of this section (and not otherwise). 20
- (4) They are allowable as a deduction from only so much of non-BLAGAB chargeable gains accruing to the company in an accounting period as exceeds the aggregate of— 25
  - (a) non-BLAGAB allowable losses accruing to the company in the accounting period, and
  - (b) non-BLAGAB allowable losses previously accruing to the company which have not been allowed as a deduction from chargeable gains accruing in any previous accounting period. 30
- (5) And they are allowable as a deduction from non-BLAGAB chargeable gains accruing to the company in an accounting period only to the extent that they do not exceed the permitted amount for the accounting period.
- (6) The permitted amount for the first accounting period of an insurance company in relation to which this section has effect is the aggregate of— 35
  - (a) the amount by which shareholders' share for that accounting period of BLAGAB allowable losses accruing to the company in the accounting period exceeds the shareholders' share of BLAGAB chargeable gains so accruing, and 40
  - (b) the shareholder's share for the immediately preceding accounting period of BLAGAB allowable losses previously accruing to the company which have not been allowed as a deduction from chargeable gains accruing in that 45

- immediately preceding accounting period or any earlier accounting period.
- (7) The permitted amount for any subsequent accounting period of the company is arrived at by –
- (a) deducting from the permitted amount for the immediately preceding accounting period the amount of any BLAGAB allowable losses allowed as a deduction from non-BLAGAB chargeable gains accruing to the company in the immediately preceding accounting period, and 5
  - (b) adjusting the result in accordance with subsection (8) or (9) below. 10
- (8) If the BLAGAB chargeable gains accruing to the company in the subsequent accounting period exceed the BLAGAB allowable losses so accruing, the amount arrived at under subsection (7)(a) above is reduced by a fraction of which – 15
- (a) the denominator is the BLAGAB allowable losses accruing to the company in any previous accounting period which have not been allowed as a deduction from chargeable gains accruing to the company in any previous accounting period, and 20
  - (b) the numerator is so many of those allowable losses as are allowed as a deduction from BLAGAB chargeable gains accruing to the company in the accounting period.
- (9) If the BLAGAB allowable losses accruing to the company in the subsequent accounting period exceed the BLAGAB chargeable gains so accruing, the amount arrived at under subsection (7)(a) above is increased by the shareholders' share of the amount by which those allowable losses exceed those chargeable gains. 25
- (10) For the purposes of this section the policy holders' share of chargeable gains or allowable losses accruing to an insurance company in an accounting period – 30
- (a) if the policy holders' share of the relevant profits for the accounting period exceeds the BLAGAB profits of the company for the period (within the meaning of section 89(1B) of the Finance Act 1989), is the whole amount of the chargeable gains or allowable losses, and 35
  - (b) otherwise, is the same proportion of that whole amount as the policy holders' share of the relevant profits of the company for the accounting period bears to those relevant profits. 40
- (11) The amount of the chargeable gains accruing to an insurance company in any accounting period shall be taken for the purposes of subsection (10) above to be what would be that amount but for –
- (a) any deduction under section 202(9) (mineral leases: capital losses), 45
  - (b) any reduction section 213(3) (spreading of losses from deemed disposal of holdings of unit trust etc), and

- (c) any amount carried back under paragraph 4(3) of Schedule 11 to the Finance Act 1996 (non-trading deficit on loan relationships).
- (12) For the purposes of this section the shareholders' share of chargeable gains or allowable losses in relation to an accounting period of an insurance company is the proportion of the whole which is not represented by the policy holders' share of them in relation to the accounting period. 5
- (13) In this section –
- “BLAGAB allowable losses”, in relation to an insurance company, means allowable losses referable to the company's basic life assurance and general annuity business, 10
  - “BLAGAB chargeable gains”, in relation to an insurance company, means chargeable gains referable to the company's basic life assurance and general annuity business, 15
  - “non-BLAGAB allowable losses”, in relation to an insurance company, means allowable losses of the company which are not BLAGAB allowable losses,
  - “non-BLAGAB chargeable gains”, in relation to an insurance company, means chargeable gains of the company which are not BLAGAB chargeable gains, and 20
  - “the relevant profits” and “the policy holders' share of the relevant profits” have the same meaning as they have for the purposes of subsection (1) of section 88 of the Finance Act 1989 by virtue of subsection (3) of that section and section 89 of that Act.”. 25
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect to limit the deductions which may be made from chargeable gains accruing in –
- (a) any accounting period of an insurance company beginning on or after 23rd December 2002, and 30
  - (b) any accounting period of an insurance company beginning before that date but ending on or after it,
- in respect of allowable losses accruing in any accounting period (whenever beginning or ending).
- (3) In relation to an accounting period within sub-paragraph (2)(b) the limitations imposed by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) apply only as respects chargeable gains accruing on or after 23rd December 2002. 35
- 14 (1) In the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12), after section 210A (inserted by paragraph 13(1)) insert –
- “210B Disposal and acquisition of section 440A securities 40**
- (1) Subsections (2) to (4) below apply in a case where an insurance company disposes of a number of section 440A securities and, within the period of 10 days before or after the disposal, acquires a number of section 440A securities if –
  - (a) the securities disposed of decrease the size of a chargeable section 440A holding, 45
  - (b) the securities acquired increase the size of the same chargeable section 440A holding, and

- (c) (apart from this section) an allowable loss would accrue on the disposal.
- (2) The securities disposed of shall be identified with the securities acquired.
- (3) The securities disposed of shall be identified with securities acquired before the disposal rather than securities acquired after the disposal and – 5
- (a) in the case of securities acquired before the disposal, with those acquired later rather than those acquired earlier, and
- (b) in the case of securities acquired after the disposal, with those acquired earlier rather than those acquired later. 10
- (4) Where securities acquired could be identified with securities disposed of either at an earlier or at a later date, they shall be identified with the former rather than the latter; and the identification of securities acquired with securities disposed of on any occasion shall preclude their identification with securities comprised in a later disposal. 15
- (5) Subsections (2) to (4) above have effect subject to section 105(1).
- (6) Subsections (2) to (4) above do not apply to – 20
- (a) securities deemed to be disposed of and immediately re-acquired by section 212 (annual deemed disposal of holdings of unit trusts etc), or
- (b) securities deemed by section 440 of the Taxes Act to be disposed of and immediately re-acquired by virtue of paragraph 3 of Schedule 19AA to the Taxes Act (assets becoming or ceasing to be assets of overseas life assurance fund). 25
- (7) Subsections (2) to (4) above do not apply if – 30
- (a) the securities disposed of are linked assets appropriated to a BLAGAB internal linked fund,
- (b) the securities acquired are, on acquisition, appropriated to that or another internal linked fund, and
- (c) the disposal and acquisition are made with a view to adjusting the value of the assets of that fund, or of those funds, in order to match its or their liabilities. 35
- (8) In this section –
- “BLAGAB internal linked fund” means an internal linked fund all the assets appropriated to which are linked solely to basic life assurance and general annuity business,
- “chargeable section 440A holding” means a holding which is a separate holding by virtue of subsection (2)(a)(iii) or (d) of section 440A of the Taxes Act (and subsections (3) and (4) of that section), 40
- “internal linked fund” has the same meaning as in section 432ZA of the Taxes Act, and
- “section 440A securities” means securities within the meaning of section 440A of the Taxes Act.”. 45



- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to disposals on or after 23rd December 2002.
- (3) But sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to disposals made by an insurance company during the period –
- (a) beginning with 23rd December 2002, and 5
  - (b) ending with 31st December 2002,
- only if the amount of the allowable losses referable to the company’s life assurance business which would have accrued to the company on the disposals (but for that sub-paragraph) would have been at least £10 million.
- 15 (1) Section 171A of the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12) (notional transfers within group) is amended as follows. 10
- (2) After subsection (3) insert –
- “(3A) Section 440(3) of the Taxes Act does not cause subsection (3) above to prevent the making of an election in a case where B is an insurance company; and in such a case the asset or part deemed to be transferred to B by A, and by B to C, is to be treated for the purposes of subsections (2)(c) and (3) above as not being part of B’s long-term insurance fund. 15
- “Insurance company” and “long-term insurance fund” have the same meaning as in Chapter 1 of Part 12 of the Taxes Act (see section 431(2) of that Act).” 20
- (3) In subsection (4), for “that subsection” substitute “subsection (2) above”.
- (4) This paragraph has effect in relation to disposals on or after 23rd December 2002.
- Transfers of business* 25
- 16 (1) In the Taxes Act 1988, after section 444A insert –
- “444AA Transfers of business: deemed periodical return**
- (1) This section applies where –
- (a) an insurance business transfer scheme has effect to transfer the whole of the long-term business of one person (“the transferor”), and 30
  - (b) the last period covered by a periodical return of the transferor ends otherwise than immediately before the transfer.
- (2) There is to be deemed for the purposes of corporation tax to be a periodical return of the transferor covering the period – 35
- (a) beginning immediately after the last period ending before the transfer which is covered by an actual periodical return of the transferor, and
  - (b) ending immediately before the transfer takes place, 40
- containing such entries as would have been included in an actual periodical return of the transferor covering that period (and so making that period a period of account of the transferor).
- (3) In a case where the last period covered by a periodical return of the transferor ends after the transfer, the periodical return covering that period is to be ignored for the purposes of corporation tax. 45

- (4) For the purposes of this section “insurance business transfer scheme” includes a scheme which would be such a scheme but for section 105(1)(b) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (which requires the business transferred to be carried on in an EEA State).”. 5
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to insurance business transfer schemes (within the meaning of section 444AA of the Taxes Act 1988) taking place on or after 1st January 2003 unless the accounting period of the transferor which ends with the day of the transfer began before that date. 5
- 17 (1) In the Taxes Act 1988, after section 444AA (inserted by paragraph 16(1)) insert – 10

**“444AB Transfers of business: charge on transferor retaining assets**

- (1) This section applies where, immediately after an insurance business transfer scheme has effect to transfer long-term business from one person (“the transferor”) to one or more others (“the transferee” or “the transferees”), the transferor – 15
- (a) does not carry on long-term business, but
- (b) holds assets which, immediately before the transfer, were assets of its long-term insurance fund.
- (2) The transferor shall be charged to tax under Case VI of Schedule D in respect of the taxable amount as if it had been received by the transferor during the accounting period beginning immediately after the day of the transfer. 20
- (3) If the transferor was charged to tax on the profits of its life assurance business under Case I of Schedule D for the accounting period ending with the day of the transfer, the taxable amount is the whole of the previously untaxed amount. 25
- (4) Otherwise, the taxable amount is the non-BLAGAB fraction of the previously untaxed amount.
- (5) The previously untaxed amount is the lesser of –
- (a) the fair value of such of the assets held by the transferor immediately after the transfer as were assets of its long-term insurance fund immediately before the transfer, and 30
- (b) the amount by which the fair value of the assets of the transferor’s long-term insurance fund immediately before the transfer exceeds the amount of the relevant pre-transfer liabilities. 35
- (6) In subsection (5) above “fair value”, in relation to assets, means the amount which would be obtained from an independent person purchasing them or, if the assets are money, its amount.
- (7) Subject to subsection (8) below, the amount of the relevant pre-transfer liabilities is the aggregate of the amounts shown in column 1 of lines 14 and 49 of Form 14 in the periodical return of the transferor covering the period of account ending immediately before the transfer. 40
- (8) If the amount of the liabilities transferred exceeds the value of the assets so transferred, as brought into account for the first period of account of the transferee (or any of the transferees) ending after the 45

- transfer, the amount of the relevant pre-transfer liabilities is the amount arrived at by deducting the excess from the aggregate of the amounts shown as mentioned in subsection (7) above.
- (9) For the purposes of subsection (4) above the non-BLAGAB fraction of the previously untaxed amount is the fraction of which – 5
- (a) the numerator is the amount of the liabilities transferred, apart from those which are liabilities of basic life assurance and general annuity business, and
  - (b) the denominator is the amount of the liabilities transferred.
- (10) References in this section to assets held by the transferor after the transfer do not include any held on trust for the transferee or any of the transferees. 10
- (11) For the purposes of this section “insurance business transfer scheme” includes a scheme which would be such a scheme but for section 105(1)(b) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (which requires the business transferred to be carried on in an EEA State).” 15
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to insurance business transfer schemes (within the meaning of section 444AB of the Taxes Act 1988) taking place in a period of account of the transferor beginning on or after 1st January 2003. 20
- 18 (1) In the Taxes Act 1988, after section 444AB (inserted by paragraph 17(1)) insert –
- “444AC Transfers of business: modification of s.83(2) FA 1989**
- (1) This section applies where an insurance business transfer scheme has effect to transfer long-term business from one person (“the transferor”) to another (“the transferee”). 25
- (2) If –
- (a) the element of the transferee’s line 15 figure representing the transferor’s long-term insurance fund, exceeds
  - (b) the amount of the liabilities to policy holders and annuitants transferred to the transferee, 30
- the excess is not to be regarded as other income of the transferee for the purposes of section 83(2)(d) of the Finance Act 1989.
- (3) In this section and section 444AD “the element of the transferee’s line 15 figure representing the transferor’s long-term insurance fund” means so much of – 35
- (a) the amount which is brought into account by the transferee as other income in the period of account of the transferee in which the transfer takes place, as represents
  - (b) the assets transferred to the transferee. 40
- 444AD Transfers of business: modification of s.83(2B) FA 1989**
- (1) This section applies where an insurance business transfer scheme has effect to transfer long-term business from one person (“the transferor”) to another (“the transferee”).

- (2) If the transferor and the transferee jointly elect, section 83(2B) of the Finance Act 1989 does not apply to the transferor by reason of the transfer as respects so much of the value of the assets to which it would otherwise so apply as does not exceed the amount specified in subsection (4) below. 5
- (3) An election under subsection (2) above –
- (a) is irrevocable, and
  - (b) is to be made by notice to an officer of the Board no later than the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the day following that on which the transfer takes place; 10
- and a copy of the notice containing the election must accompany the tax return of the transferee for the first accounting period ending after the transfer.
- Paragraphs 54 to 60 of Schedule 18 to the Finance Act 1998 (claims and elections for corporation tax purposes) do not apply to such an election. 15
- (4) The amount referred to in subsection (2) above is the amount by which –
- (a) the fair value of the assets of the long-term insurance fund of the transferee immediately after the transfer, is greater than 20
  - (b) the element of the transferee’s line 15 figure representing the transferor’s long-term insurance fund.
- (5) In subsection (4) above “fair value”, in relation to assets, means the amount which would be obtained from an independent person purchasing them or, if the assets are money, its amount. 25

#### **444AE Transfers of business: modification of s.83ZA FA 1989**

- (1) This section applies where an insurance business transfer scheme has effect to transfer long-term business from one person (“the transferor”) to another (“the transferee”).
- (2) If a contingent loan made to the transferor (within the meaning of subsection (1) of section 83ZA of the Finance Act 1989) is transferred to the transferee, that section has effect as if –
- (a) the contingent loan had become repayable by the transferor immediately before the transfer, and
  - (b) the contingent loan were made to the transferee immediately after the transfer.”. 35
- (2) In section 431(2) of the Taxes Act 1988, after the definition of “basic life assurance and general annuity business” insert –
- ““brought into account” has the meaning given by section 83A of the Finance Act 1989;”. 40
- (3) This paragraph has effect in relation to insurance business transfer schemes taking place on or after 1st January 2003.
- (4) If 30th September 2003 is later than the end of the period specified in subsection (3)(b) of section 444AD of the Taxes Act 1988 (inserted by subparagraph (1)), an election under subsection (2) of that section may be made no later than that date. 45
- 19 (1) In the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c.12), after section 211

insert –

**“211ZA Transfers of business: transfer of unused losses**

- (1) This section applies where –
  - (a) an insurance business transfer scheme has effect to transfer business consisting of or including basic life assurance and general annuity business from one person (“the transferor”) to another (“the transferee”) or more than one others (“the transferees”), and 5
  - (b) the transferor has relevant unused losses.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b) above the transferor has relevant unused losses if – 10
  - (a) BLAGAB allowable losses accrue to the transferor in the accounting period ending with the day of the transfer or have so accrued in any earlier accounting period, and
  - (b) they are not deducted from chargeable gains accruing to the transferor in that accounting period and have not been deducted from chargeable gains so accruing in any previous accounting period. 15
- (3) Subject as follows –
  - (a) for the purposes of ascertaining the transferor’s total profits for any accounting period after that in which the transfer takes place, the relevant unused losses are deemed not to have accrued to the transferor, but 20
  - (b) (instead) they are treated as accruing to the transferee (in accordance with subsection (4) below). 25
- (4) The losses treated as accruing to the transferee under subsection (3)(b) above shall be deemed to be BLAGAB allowable losses accruing to the transferee in the accounting period of the transferee in which the transfer takes place.
- (5) But those losses are not allowable as a deduction from chargeable gains accruing before the transfer takes place. 30
- (6) For the purposes of section 210A (ring-fencing of losses), the shareholders’ share of those losses is to be taken to be the same proportion as would be the shareholders’ share of them if they had remained losses of the transferor. 35
- (7) If only part of the transferor’s basic life assurance and general annuity business is transferred, subsection (3) above applies as if the references to the relevant unused losses were to such part of the relevant unused losses as is appropriate.
- (8) If the transfer is to more than one others, subsection (3)(b) above applies as if the reference to the relevant unused losses being treated as accruing to the transferee were to such part of the relevant unused losses as is appropriate being treated as accruing to each of the transferees. 40
- (9) Any question arising as to the operation of subsection (7) or (8) above shall be determined by the Special Commissioners who shall 45

- determine the question in the same manner as they determine appeals; but both the transferor and the transferee (or the one of the transferees concerned) shall be entitled to appear and be heard or to make representations in writing.
- (10) In this section “BLAGAB allowable losses” means allowable losses referable to the transferor’s basic life assurance and general annuity business.”. 5
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to insurance business transfer schemes taking place on or after 1st January 2003.
- 20 (1) In section 431 of the Taxes Act 1988 (interpretative provisions relating to insurance companies), after subsection (2) insert – 10
- “(2ZA) Subsections (2ZB) and (2ZC) below apply where an insurance business transfer scheme has effect to transfer long-term business from one person (“the transferor”) to another (“the transferee”).
- (2ZB) If the transfer takes place otherwise than on the last day of a period of account of the transferor, references to – 15
- (a) opening liabilities of the transferor,  
(b) opening values or net values of assets of the transferor, or  
(c) the opening amount of the investment reserve of the transferor, 20
- for the period of account, so far as relating to the business transferred, are to the part of those liabilities or values, or that reserve, which bears to the whole the proportion A/C.
- (2ZC) If the transfer takes place otherwise than on the first day of a period of account of the transferee, references to – 25
- (a) closing liabilities of the transferee,  
(b) closing values or net values of assets of the transferee, or  
(c) the closing amount of the investment reserve of the transferee, 30
- for the period of account, so far as relating to the business transferred, are to the part of those liabilities or values, or that reserve, which bears to the whole the proportion B/C.
- (2ZD) In subsections (2ZB) and (2ZC) above – 35
- A is the number of days in the period beginning with the period of account and ending with the day of the transfer,  
B is the number of days in the period beginning with the day of the transfer and ending with the period of account, and  
C is one-half of the number of days in the period of account.”.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect in relation to insurance business transfer schemes taking place on or after 1st January 2003 unless the accounting period of the transferor which ends with the day of the transfer began before that date. 40
- 21 (1) Section 442A of the Taxes Act 1988 (investment return treated as accruing in respect of reinsured risk) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “over the period of” substitute “while the risk remains reinsured by the company under”. 45

- (3) After subsection (3) insert –
- “(3A) Where a transfer of the reinsurance arrangement from one insurance company (“the transferor”) to another (“the transferee”) is effected by novation or an insurance business transfer scheme, for the purpose of calculating the investment return to be treated as accruing to the transferee in respect of the policy or contract after the transfer, the references to the company in subsection (3)(a), (b) and (c) above include (as well as the transferee) –
- (a) the transferor, and
  - (b) any insurance company from which the reinsurance arrangement was transferred on an earlier transfer effected by novation or an insurance business transfer scheme.”.
- (4) In subsection (4), omit “to the company”.
- (5) This paragraph has effect in relation to transfers of reinsurance arrangements taking place on or after 1st January 2003.
- 22 (1) Section 444A of the Taxes Act 1988 (transfers of business: losses etc) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3), insert at the end “if the conditions in paragraphs (a) and (b) of section 343(1) are satisfied in relation to the business transferred (construing references to an event as to the transfer).”.
- (3) After that subsection insert –
- “(3ZA) Where subsection (3) above has effect, sections 343(2), (4), (5) and (7) to (12) and 344 apply in relation to the business in which the loss arose construing –
- (a) references to the predecessor and the successor as to (respectively) the transferor and the transferee, and
  - (b) references to section 343(3) as to subsection (3) of this section, except that nothing in section 343(8) to (10) and (12) applies in relation to the transferee.”.
- (4) This paragraph has effect in relation to insurance business transfer schemes taking place on or after 1st January 2003 unless the accounting period of the transferor which ends with the day of the transfer, or the accounting period of the transferee during which the transfer takes place, began before that date.
- Meaning of “investment reserve” etc*
- 23 In section 431(2) (interpretative provisions relating to insurance companies), after the definition of “insurance company” insert –
- ““investment reserve”, in relation to an insurance company, means the excess of the value of the assets of the company’s long-term business over the aggregate of –
- (a) the value of the liabilities of that business, and
  - (b) any money debts (within the meaning of Chapter 2 of Part 4 of the Finance Act 1996) of the company not within paragraph (a) above which are owed in respect of that business;”.

- 24 In section 432A(9A) of the Taxes Act 1988 (apportionment of income and gains: meaning of “net value”), for the words after “assets over” substitute “the value of money debts (within the meaning of Chapter 2 of Part 4 of the Finance Act 1996) attributable to an internal linked fund which are not owed in respect of long-term liabilities.”. 5
- 25 In paragraph 4(5) of Schedule 19AA to the Taxes Act 1988 (overseas life assurance fund), in the definition of “investment reserve”, for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute –  
 “(a) the value of the liabilities of that business, and  
 (b) any money debts of the company not within paragraph (a) above which are owed in respect of that business;”. 10
- 26 Paragraphs 23 to 25 have effect in relation to periods of account beginning on or after 1st January 2003.

*Rationalisation of interpretation provisions*

- 27 In section 84(2) and (3) of the Finance Act 1989 (c. 26) (interpretation of sections 85 to 89 and further provisions about insurance companies), for “the sections referred to in subsection (1) above” substitute “sections 85 to 89 below”. 15
- 28 In the Finance Act 1989, after section 90 insert –  
**“90A Interpretation** 20  
 Expressions used in any of sections 82 to 90 above (or Schedule 8A to this Act) and in Chapter 1 of Part 12 of the Taxes Act 1988 have the same meaning in those sections (or that Schedule) as in that Chapter.”.
- 29 In the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12), after section 214B insert –  
**“214BA Interpretation** 25  
 Expressions used in this Chapter and in Chapter 1 of Part 12 of the Taxes Act have the same meaning in this Chapter as in that Chapter.”. 30

## SCHEDULE 34

Section 170

## POLICIES OF LIFE INSURANCE ETC: MISCELLANEOUS AMENDMENTS

## PART 1

## GROUP LIFE POLICIES

- Exception of certain group life policies from Chapter 2 of Part 13* 35
- 1 (1) Section 539 of the Taxes Act 1988 (introductory) is amended as follows.  
 (2) In subsection (2) (policies and contracts to which the Chapter does not



- apply) at the end of paragraph (d) add “; or
- (e) to any group life policy having as its sole object the provision, on the death or disability of any of the individuals insured under the policy, of a sum substantially the same as any amount then outstanding under a loan made by a credit union to that individual; or 5
  - (f) to any group life policy with respect to which the conditions in section 539A are satisfied (“an excepted group life policy”).”.
- (3) In subsection (3) (defined expressions) insert each of the following definitions at the appropriate place – 10
- ““credit union” means a society registered as a credit union under the Industrial and Provident Societies Act 1965 or the Credit Unions (Northern Ireland) Order 1985;”;
  - ““excepted group life policy” shall be construed in accordance with subsection (2)(f) above;”;
  - ““group life policy” means a policy of life insurance whose terms provide – 15
    - (a) for the payment of benefits on the death of more than one individual; and 20
    - (b) for those benefits to be paid on the death of each of those individuals;”.

*Excepted group life policies*

2 After section 539 of the Taxes Act 1988 insert –

- “539A The conditions for being an excepted group life policy”** 25
- (1) The conditions mentioned in section 539(2)(f) (excepted group life policies) are those set out in the following provisions of this section.
  - (2) Condition 1 is that under the terms of the policy a sum or other benefit of a capital nature is payable or arises on the death of each of the individuals insured under the policy who dies without attaining an age which is specified in the policy and is not greater than 75 years. 30
    - In determining whether this condition is satisfied, disregard any terms of the policy which exclude from benefit the death of a person in specified circumstances, if the exclusion applies in relation to death in those circumstances in the case of each of the individuals insured under the policy. 35
  - (3) Condition 2 is that under the terms of the policy –
    - (a) the same method is to be used for calculating the sums or other benefits of a capital nature payable or arising on each death, and 40
    - (b) if there is any limitation on those sums or other benefits, the limitation is the same in the case of any death.
  - (4) Condition 3 is that the policy does not have, and is not capable of having, on any day – 45

- 
- (a) a surrender value that exceeds the proportion of the premiums paid which, on a time apportionment, is referable to the unexpired paid-up period beginning with that day, or
- (b) if there is no such period, any surrender value.
- For the purposes of this subsection the unexpired paid-up period beginning with any day is the period (if any) which –
- (i) begins with that day, and
- (ii) ends with the earliest subsequent day on which –
- (a) a payment of premium falls due under the policy, or
- (b) the term of the policy ends.
- (5) Condition 4 is that no sums or other benefits may be paid or conferred under the policy, except as mentioned in condition 1 or condition 3.
- (6) Condition 5 is that any sums payable or other benefits arising under the policy must (whether directly or indirectly) be paid to or for, or conferred on, or applied at the direction of –
- (a) an individual or charity beneficially entitled to them, or
- (b) a trustee or other person acting in a fiduciary capacity who will secure that the sums or other benefits are paid to or for, or conferred on, or applied in favour of, an individual or charity beneficially.
- In this subsection “charity” means any body of persons or trust established for charitable purposes only.
- (7) Condition 6 is that no person –
- (a) who is an individual whose life is insured under the policy, or
- (b) who is, within the meaning of section 839, connected with an individual whose life is so insured,
- may, by virtue of a group membership right relating to that individual, receive (directly or indirectly) any death benefit in respect of another group member.
- In this subsection –
- (i) “group membership right”, in relation to an individual, means any right (including the right of any person to be considered by trustees in their exercise of a discretion) that is referable to that individual’s being one of the individuals whose lives are insured by the policy; and
- (ii) “death benefit in respect of another group member” means –
- (a) any sums or other benefits payable or arising under the policy on the death of any other of those individuals, or
- (b) anything representing any such sums or benefits.
- (8) Condition 7 is that a tax avoidance purpose is not the main purpose, or one of the main purposes, for which a person is at any time –
- (a) the holder, or one of the holders, of the policy, or
- (b) the person, or one of the persons, beneficially entitled under the policy.

In this subsection –

- (i) “tax avoidance purpose” means any purpose that consists in securing a tax advantage (whether for the holder of the policy or any other person); and
- (ii) “tax advantage” has the same meaning as in Chapter 1 of Part 17 (tax avoidance).”.

*Retrospective exception of past and present pure protection group life policies*

- 3 (1) For the purposes of Chapter 2 of Part 13 of the Taxes Act 1988 (and any former enactment that is re-enacted in that Chapter), any event happening before 9th April 2003 in relation to a policy of life insurance which, at the time of the event, was a pure protection group life policy shall be deemed not to have been a chargeable event. 10
- (2) For the purposes of this paragraph a policy of life insurance is at any time a pure protection group life policy if at that time it is a group life policy whose terms do not provide for any sums or other benefits to be paid or conferred except on death or disability. 15

*Existing group life policies: time for compliance with the conditions in section 539A*

- 4 (1) Where –
  - (a) on 9th April 2003 a policy of life insurance issued in respect of an insurance made before that date is a group life policy but the conditions in section 539A of the Taxes Act 1988 are not satisfied, 20
  - (b) on or after that date, the terms of the policy are varied so that those conditions are satisfied before 6th April 2004, and
  - (c) during the period beginning with 9th April 2003 and ending with the date when the variation takes effect (“the transitional period”), no sums become payable, and no other benefits arise, under the policy except on death or disability, 25the conditions in section 539A of the Taxes Act 1988 shall be taken for the purposes of Chapter 2 of Part 13 of the Taxes Act 1988 to have been satisfied with respect to the policy throughout the transitional period. 30
- (2) Where, for the purposes of Chapter 2 of Part 13 of the Taxes Act 1988, –
  - (a) on 9th April 2003 a policy of life insurance issued in respect of an insurance made before that date (“the old policy”) is a group life policy but the conditions in section 539A of the Taxes Act 1988 are not satisfied, 35
  - (b) on or after that date, the terms of the insurance are varied solely for the purpose of securing that those conditions are satisfied before 6th April 2004 with respect to a policy in respect of the insurance, and
  - (c) as a result of the variation, the old policy is replaced by a new policy (“the new policy”), 40sub-paragraph (3) applies.
- (3) Where this sub-paragraph applies –
  - (a) the old policy and the new policy shall be treated for the purposes of –
    - (i) paragraph 3(1), 45
    - (ii) sub-paragraph (1), and
    - (iii) Chapter 2 of Part 13 of the Taxes Act 1988,

as a single policy issued in respect of an insurance made at the time of the making of the insurance in respect of which the old policy was issued, and

- (b) that deemed single policy shall be treated for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) as if the variation mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(b) had been a variation of its terms taking effect on the date on which that variation takes effect (but not resulting in the replacement of the deemed single policy). 5

*Deaths before 6th April 2004: period for insurer to give certificate under section 552(1)(a)*

- 5 (1) If any death giving rise to benefits under a group life policy occurs – 10  
 (a) on or after 9th April 2003, but  
 (b) before 6th April 2004,  
 subsection (6) of section 552 of the Taxes Act 1988 (relevant three month period for insurer to give certificate under section 552(1)(a) to policy holder) shall have effect in relation to that policy and that death as if there were included among the paragraphs of that subsection the unnumbered paragraph set out in sub-paragraph (2). 15
- (2) That paragraph is –  
 “( ) if the event is a death and the policy in question is a group life policy, the period of three months following 5th April 2004;”. 20

## PART 2

### CHARITABLE AND NON-CHARITABLE TRUSTS

*Interpretation*

- 6 In section 539 of the Taxes Act 1988 (introductory) in subsection (3), insert each of the following definitions at the appropriate place – 25  
 ““charitable trust” means any trust established for charitable purposes only;”  
 ““non-charitable trust” means any trust other than a charitable trust.”.

*Method of charging gain to tax* 30

- 7 (1) Section 547 of the Taxes Act 1988 is amended as follows.  
 (2) In subsection (1) (attribution of gain) in paragraph (a) (which refers to trusts created by an individual) before “trusts” insert “non-charitable”.  
 (3) In paragraph (b) of that subsection (which refers to trusts created by a company) before “trusts” insert “non-charitable”. 35  
 (4) After paragraph (c) of that subsection (personal representatives) insert –  
 “(cc) if, immediately before the happening of that event, those rights –  
 (i) were held on charitable trusts, or  
 (ii) were held as security for a debt owed by trustees of a charitable trust,  
 subsection (9) or (10) below (as the case may be) shall apply in relation to the amount of the gain;”. 40

- (5) In paragraph (d) of that subsection (trusts) in sub-paragraph (i) (rights held on trusts etc) before “trusts”, where first occurring, insert “non-charitable”.
- (6) For the word “or” at the end of sub-paragraph (i) of that paragraph substitute the following sub-paragraph—
- “(ia) those rights were held on non-charitable trusts and the circumstances were not such as are mentioned in paragraph (a), (b) or (c) above or sub-paragraph (i) above, or”.
- (7) In sub-paragraph (ii) of that paragraph (rights held as security for debt owed by trustees) after “trustees” insert “of a non-charitable trust”.
- (8) After subsection (4) insert—
- “(4A) In subsection (1) above—
- (a) paragraph (cc) is subject to paragraph 12(1) of Schedule 34 to the Finance Act 2003 (which applies paragraph 7(1) of Schedule 14 to the Finance Act 1998);
- (b) paragraph (d)(ia) is subject to paragraph 12(2) of that Schedule (exception for certain cases where insurance etc made or effected before 9th April 2003).”.
- (9) In subsection (5AA) (which, in a case falling within subsection (1)(d), applies, with modifications, to trustees the tax treatment for individuals under subsection (5)) for “subsection (1)(d)” substitute “subsection (1)(cc) or (d)”.
- (10) In subsection (9) (treatment of gains in case falling within subsection (1)(d) where trustees resident in United Kingdom)—
- (a) for “(1)(d)” substitute “(1)(cc) or (d)”; and
- (b) in paragraph (b) (gain to be chargeable to income tax at the rate applicable to trusts) for “the rate applicable to trusts” substitute “the appropriate rate”.
- (11) After subsection (9) insert—
- “(9A) For the purposes of subsection (9) above, the “appropriate rate” for any year—
- (a) in a case falling within subsection (1)(cc) above, is the basic rate for that year; and
- (b) in a case falling within subsection (1)(d) above, is the rate applicable to trusts for that year.”.
- (12) In subsection (10) (treatment of gains in case falling within subsection (1)(d) where trustees not resident in United Kingdom) for “(1)(d)” substitute “(1)(cc) or (d)”.

*Method of charging gain to tax: multiple interests*

- 8 (1) Section 547A of the Taxes Act 1988 is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3) (the cases where a person has a relevant interest) in paragraph (a) (which refers to trusts created by an individual) before “trusts” insert “non-charitable”.
- (3) In paragraph (b) of that subsection (which refers to trusts created by a company) before “trusts” insert “non-charitable”.

- (4) After paragraph (c) of that subsection (personal representatives) insert –  
 “(cc) in the case of trustees of a charitable trust, if a share in the rights is held by them or as security for a debt owed by them;”.
- (5) In paragraph (d) of that subsection (trustees) after “trustees” insert “of a non-charitable trust”. 5
- (6) For the word “or” at the end of sub-paragraph (i) of that paragraph substitute the following sub-paragraph –  
 “(ia) if a share in the rights is held by them which does not also fall within paragraph (a), (b) or (c) above or sub-paragraph (i) above; or”. 10
- (7) In subsection (6) (rights or share held on trusts created by two or more persons) before “trusts”, where first occurring, insert “non-charitable”.
- (8) In subsection (10) (case where different shares of the whole trust property originate from different persons) – 15  
 (a) in paragraph (a), before “trusts” insert “non-charitable”; and  
 (b) in the closing words, before “trusts” insert “non-charitable”.

*Deemed surrender of certain loans*

- 9 (1) Section 548(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph (a) (condition that gain would be treated under section 547 as part of an individual’s total income or income of a company) after “income of a company” insert “or of any trustees”. 20
- (3) In paragraph (c) (condition that sum is lent to, or at the direction of, the individual or company by, or by arrangement with, the body issuing etc the policy or contract) after “company” insert “or those trustees”. 25

*Right of individual to recover tax from trustees*

- 10 In section 551 of the Taxes Act 1988, in subsection (1) (individual liable as settlor) in paragraph (b), for “trust” substitute “non-charitable trusts”.

*Right of company to recover tax from trustees*

- 11 In section 551A of the Taxes Act 1988, in subsection (1) (company liable as settlor) in paragraph (b), for “trust” substitute “non-charitable trusts”. 30

*Section 547(1)(cc) and (d)(ia): exception for certain old policies and contracts*

- 12 (1) Paragraph 7(1) of Schedule 14 to the Finance Act 1998 (c. 36) (exception for certain cases where the trust was created before 17th March 1998, the creator etc was an individual who died before that date and the insurance etc was made or effected before that date) has effect in relation to section 547(1)(cc) of the Taxes Act 1988 as it has effect in relation to section 547(1)(d) of that Act. 35
- (2) Paragraph (d) of section 547(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 (trustees of a non-charitable trust) does not have effect by virtue of sub-paragraph (ia) of that paragraph in relation to the amount of a gain if the gain is treated as arising on the happening of a chargeable event in relation to a pre-commencement policy or contract. 40

- (3) In this paragraph “pre-commencement policy or contract” means –
- (a) any policy of life insurance issued in respect of an insurance made before 9th April 2003,
  - (b) any contract for a life annuity made before that date, or
  - (c) any capital redemption policy where the contract was effected before that date, 5
- but does not include any such policy or contract falling within sub-paragraph (4).
- (4) A policy or contract falls within this sub-paragraph if, on or after 9th April 2003 (but before the happening of the chargeable event in question), – 10
- (a) the policy or contract has been varied so as to increase the benefits secured or to extend the term of the insurance, annuity or capital redemption policy (any exercise of rights conferred by the policy being regarded for this purpose as a variation); or
  - (b) there has been an assignment (whether or not for money’s worth) of the rights, or a share in the rights, conferred by the policy or contract to trustees of a non-charitable trust, as defined in section 539(3) of the Taxes Act 1988. 15

### PART 3

#### MEANING OF “LIFE ANNUITY” 20

##### *Restriction of “life annuity” to contracts to which section 656 of the Taxes Act 1988 applies*

- 13 In section 539 of the Taxes Act 1988 (introductory) in subsection (3), for the definition of “life annuity” substitute –
- ““life annuity” means any annuity to which section 656 (as read with section 657) applies.”. 25

### PART 4

#### ROLLOVER OF GAIN ON MATURITY INTO NEW POLICY

##### *Repeal of section 540(2) of the Taxes Act 1988*

- 14 (1) Section 540(2) of the Taxes Act 1988 (maturity not a chargeable event if option exercised to re-invest whole proceeds of maturing policy in new policy) shall cease to have effect. 30
- (2) This paragraph is subject to paragraph 15.

##### *Saving for certain policies maturing on or after 9th April 2003*

- 15 (1) The maturity of a policy of life insurance (“the old policy”) on or after 9th April 2003 is not a chargeable event for the purposes of Chapter 2 of Part 13 of the Taxes Act 1988 if – 35
- (a) a new policy is issued in consequence of the exercise of an option conferred by the old policy,
  - (b) all sums becoming payable under the old policy on or after 9th April 2003 are retained by the company with which the insurance was 40

- made and applied in the payment of one or more premiums under the new policy, and
- (c) sub-paragraph (2) applies.
- (2) This sub-paragraph applies if –
- (a) the option was exercised in writing on or before 8th April 2003, or 5
- (b) the old policy matures on or before 30th April 2003 and has not been varied on or after 9th April 2003 so as to –
- (i) change the date of maturity of the policy,
- (ii) change any option conferred by the policy, or
- (iii) confer any option. 10

### SCHEDULE 35

Section 172

#### GAINS ON POLICIES OF LIFE INSURANCE, ETC: RATE OF TAX

##### *Application of the lower rate*

- 1 (1) Section 1A of the Taxes Act 1988 (application of lower rate to income from savings and distributions) is amended as follows. 15
- (2) In subsection (2) (which specifies the income to which the lower rate applies) omit the word “and” immediately preceding paragraph (c) and at the end of that paragraph insert “; and
- (d) any amount included in an individual’s total income by virtue of section 547(1)(a) (chargeable event gains on life policies etc).”.
- (3) In subsection (5) (ordering rule for highest part of income for the purposes of the Income Tax Acts) after “the Income Tax Acts” insert “(other than section 550)”.

##### *Method of charging gains from policies of life insurance etc to tax* 25

- 2 (1) Section 547 of the Taxes Act 1988 is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (5)(a) (individual to be treated as having paid income tax at the basic rate on a sum included in his income by virtue of subsection (1)(a)) for “the basic rate” substitute “the lower rate”.
- (3) In subsection (9A)(a) (definition of “the appropriate rate” where charitable trustees are liable to income tax on a gain by virtue of subsection (9)) for “the basic rate for that year” substitute “the lower rate”. 30

##### *Relief where gain charged at a higher rate*

- 3 In section 550(3) (rates of tax to be applied in calculating tax which would be chargeable on gain if calculated by reference to the appropriate fraction) for “the basic rate” substitute “the lower rate”. 35



*Gains included in aggregate income of estate of deceased*

- 4 In section 699A(4)(b) (sums included in aggregate income of estate of the deceased by virtue of section 547(1)(c) to be assumed to bear tax at the basic rate) for “the basic rate” substitute “the lower rate”.

*Income to be disregarded in determining highest part of person’s income* 5

- 5 In section 833(3)(b) of the Taxes Act 1988 (which provides that, where income falls to be treated as the highest part of a person’s income, his income shall be calculated without regard to any amount included in total income by virtue of section 547(1)(a)) after “section 547(1)(a)” add “which is a sum in relation to which section 547(5) applies”. 10

SCHEDULE 36

Section 175

FOSTER CARERS

PART 1

INTRODUCTION

*Introductory* 15

- 1 (1) This Schedule provides relief on income from the provision by an individual of foster care (see paragraph 4).  
(2) The form of relief available depends on whether his total foster care receipts (see paragraph 5) exceed his limit (see paragraphs 6 to 9).  
(3) If they do not, paragraph 10 provides for the income to be exempt from income tax. 20  
(4) If they do, the individual may elect for an alternative method of calculating the income (see paragraphs 11 to 14).

*Individuals qualifying for relief*

- 2 (1) An individual qualifies for relief under this Schedule for a year of assessment for which the following conditions are met. 25  
(2) The first condition is that the individual has foster care receipts (see paragraph 3).  
(3) The second condition is that the individual does not derive any taxable income, other than foster care receipts, from any relevant trade, profession or vocation, or from any relevant foster care arrangement. 30  
(4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3)–  
(a) “taxable income” means receipts or other income in respect of which the individual is chargeable to tax for the year of assessment;  
(b) a relevant trade, profession or vocation, or a relevant foster care arrangement, is one from which the individual derives any foster care receipts for that year. 35

- (5) In this Schedule, “foster care arrangement” means an arrangement by which an individual provides foster care otherwise than as part of a trade, profession or vocation carried on by that individual.

*Meaning of “foster care receipts”*

- 3 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule, receipts are “foster care receipts” of an individual for a year of assessment if – 5
- (a) they are receipts in respect of the provision of foster care,
  - (b) apart from this Schedule, they would be chargeable –
    - (i) under Case I or II of Schedule D as the profits of a trade, profession or vocation, or 10
    - (ii) under Case VI of Schedule D as the profits of one or more foster care arrangements, and
  - (c) they accrue to the individual during the income period for those receipts specified below.
- (2) In the case of receipts which would, apart from this Schedule, be chargeable under Case I or II of Schedule D as the profits of a trade, profession or vocation, the income period for those receipts is the basis period of the trade, profession or vocation for the year of assessment (see sections 60 to 63 of the Taxes Act 1988). 15
- (3) In the case of receipts which would, apart from this Schedule, be chargeable under Case VI of Schedule D as the profits of one or more foster care arrangements, the income period for those receipts is the year of assessment. 20

*Meaning of “provision of foster care”*

- 4 (1) In this Schedule, the “provision of foster care” means the provision of accommodation and maintenance for a child by an individual who – 25
- (a) is a person falling within any of sub-paragraphs (2) to (4), and
  - (b) is not a person who is excluded by sub-paragraph (5).
- (2) A person falls within this sub-paragraph if he is a person with whom the child has been placed under –
- (a) section 23(2)(a) of the Children Act 1989 (c. 41) (provision of accommodation and maintenance for children by local authorities), or 30
  - (b) section 59(1)(a) of that Act (provision of accommodation for children by voluntary organisations).
- (3) A person falls within this sub-paragraph if – 35
- (a) he is a person who is approved as a foster carer by a local authority or a voluntary organisation in accordance with regulations under section 5 of the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968 (c. 49) (as at 9th April 2003, see regulation 7 of the Fostering of Children (Scotland) Regulations 1996 (S.I. 1996/3263)) and is providing accommodation for the child who is being “looked after” by a local authority within the meaning of section 17(6) of the Children (Scotland) Act 1995 (c. 36), or 40
  - (b) he is a person with whom the child has been placed –
    - (i) under regulations under section 5 of the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968 (as at 9th April 2003, see regulations 14 45

- and 16 of the Fostering of Children (Scotland) Regulations 1996), or
- (ii) pursuant to a supervision requirement under section 70 of the Children (Scotland) Act 1995.
- (4) A person falls within this sub-paragraph if he is a person with whom the child has been placed under – 5
- (a) Article 27(2)(a) of the Children (Northern Ireland) Order 1995 (S.I. 1995/755 (N.I. 2)) (provision of accommodation and maintenance for children by authorities), or
- (b) Article 75(1)(a) of that Order (provision of accommodation for children by voluntary organisations). 10
- (5) The persons who are excluded are –
- (a) a parent of the child;
- (b) a person who is not a parent of the child but who has parental responsibility, or (in Scotland) parental responsibilities, in relation to the child; 15
- (c) where the child is in care and there was a residence order in force with respect to him immediately before the care order was made, a person in whose favour the residence order was made;
- (d) in Scotland, where the child is in care and there was a residence order or a contact order in force with respect to him immediately before he was placed in care, a person in whose favour the residence order or contact order was made. 20

*Meaning of “total foster care receipts”*

- 5 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule, an individual’s “total foster care receipts” for a year of assessment or (as the case may be) a period of account are all of the individual’s foster care receipts for that year or period. 25
- (2) In calculating an individual’s total foster care receipts, no deduction is allowed for any expenses or any other matter.

*The individual’s limit* 30

- 6 The individual’s limit for a year of assessment is the total of –
- (a) the individual’s share of the fixed amount for that year (see paragraph 7), and
- (b) each amount per child for that individual for that year (see paragraph 8). 35

*The individual’s share of the fixed amount*

- 7 (1) The fixed amount is £10,000.
- (2) If, in a year of assessment, no adjustment falls to be made in the case of an individual –
- (a) under sub-paragraph (3), or
- (b) under sub-paragraph (4), 40
- the individual’s share of the fixed amount for that year is the fixed amount.
- (3) If, in a year of assessment, –

- (a) the residence used to provide the foster care from which an individual's foster care receipts for that year are derived is also used by one or more other individuals for the provision of foster care, and
- (b) that other individual, or those other individuals, also have foster care receipts for that year, 5
- each individual's share of the fixed amount for that year is that amount divided by the total number of individuals who use the residence in that year for the provision of foster care and have foster care receipts for that year.
- This sub-paragraph is subject to sub-paragraph (4). 10
- (4) If, in a year of assessment, the individual's income period for his foster care receipts is a period other than a year, the individual's share of the fixed amount for that year of assessment is found by multiplying the amount that would be his share (apart from this sub-paragraph) by –
- $$\frac{D}{365} \quad 15$$
- where D is the number of days in the individual's income period.
- (5) In this paragraph "residence" means –
- (a) a building, or part of a building, which is occupied or intended to be occupied as a separate residence, or
- (b) a caravan or houseboat. 20
- (6) If a building or part of a building is designed for permanent use as a single residence, but is temporarily divided into two or more separate residences, it is still treated as a single residence.

*The amount per child*

- 8 (1) An individual's amount per child for a year of assessment is found by multiplying – 25
- (a) the number of weeks during the income period for that year in which the individual provides foster care for that child, by
- (b) the weekly amount for that child.
- (2) The weekly amount for a child is – 30
- (a) £200 for a week throughout which the child is under 11 years old, and
- (b) £250 for a week – 35
- (i) in which the child reaches the age of 11, or
- (ii) throughout which the child is 11 years old or over.
- (3) Where in the case of any week an individual provides foster care for a child during an income period for part only of the week, that part of a week counts as a whole week for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (4) Where an income period begins or ends during a week, that week is to be counted for the purposes of this paragraph as falling within the income period which ends during the week (unless there is no such income period, in which case it falls within the income period which begins during the week). 40

- (5) In this paragraph “week” means any period of seven days beginning with a Monday.

*Power to alter amounts*

- 9 The Treasury may by order amend the amounts for the time being specified in paragraph 7(1) and 8(2). 5

PART 2

THE EXEMPTION AND THE ALTERNATIVE METHODS OF CALCULATION

*The exemption*

- 10 (1) This paragraph applies to an individual for a year of assessment for which – 10
- (a) the individual qualifies for relief under this Schedule,
  - (b) his total foster care receipts do not exceed his limit, and
  - (c) paragraph 15 (cases where accounting date for trade, profession or vocation is other than 5th April) does not apply.
- (2) If the individual’s foster care receipts for the year of assessment are the receipts of a trade, profession or vocation, the profits or losses from that trade, profession or vocation for the year are to be treated as nil. 15
- (3) If, in a case falling within sub-paragraph (2), the individual would, apart from that sub-paragraph, be entitled to a deduction for the year under section 63A(1) or (3) of the Taxes Act 1988 (overlap profits and overlap losses), the individual is entitled to that deduction notwithstanding that sub-paragraph. 20
- (4) Sub-paragraph (5) applies if the individual’s foster care receipts for the year of assessment are receipts from one or more foster care arrangements.
- (5) For each foster care arrangement from which those receipts arise, the amount of – 25
- (a) the receipts arising in the year of assessment from the arrangement, less
  - (b) any expenses associated with those receipts,
- is to be treated as nil.

*Alternative calculation of profits where amount is above the limit* 30

- 11 The alternative method of calculating profits given in paragraphs 12 and 13 applies to an individual for a year of assessment for which –
- (a) the individual qualifies for relief under this Schedule,
  - (b) his total foster care receipts exceed his limit,
  - (c) paragraph 15 (cases where accounting date for trade, profession or vocation is other than 5th April) does not apply, and 35
  - (d) an election by him under paragraph 14 has effect.

*Alternative calculation of profits: income from trade, etc*

- 12 (1) This paragraph applies if –
- (a) the alternative method of calculating profits applies to an individual for a year of assessment, and 40

- (b) his foster care receipts for the year are the receipts of a trade, profession or vocation.
- (2) The profits of the year of assessment of the trade, profession or vocation from which the individual's foster care receipts arise are –
  - (a) the amount of the foster care receipts for the year arising from the trade, profession or vocation, less 5
  - (b) the individual's limit for the year.

*Alternative calculation of profits: income charged under Case VI of Schedule D*

- 13 (1) This paragraph applies if –
  - (a) the alternative method of calculating profits applies to an individual for a year of assessment, and 10
  - (b) his foster care receipts for the year are receipts from one or more foster care arrangements.
- (2) The amount of the profits of the year of assessment from all of the foster care arrangements from which the individual's foster care receipts arise is – 15
  - (a) the sum of the foster care receipts for the year from each foster care arrangement from which those receipts arise, less
  - (b) the individual's limit for the year.

*Election for alternative method*

- 14 (1) An individual may elect – 20
  - (a) for the alternative method of calculating profits given in paragraph 12 or 13 to apply if the conditions specified in paragraph 11(a), (b) and (c) are met, and
  - (b) for the alternative method of calculating profits given in sub-paragraph (5) of paragraph 15 to apply if the conditions specified in paragraphs (a) and (b) of sub-paragraph (4) of that paragraph are met. 25
- (2) An election under this paragraph has effect for the year of assessment for which it is made.
- (3) Subject to sub-paragraphs (5) and (6), an election under this paragraph must be made on or before the election deadline for the year of assessment to which it relates. 30
- (4) The election deadline for a year of assessment is –
  - (a) the first anniversary of the 31st January next following that year of assessment, or 35
  - (b) such later date as the Board may in any particular case allow.
- (5) If –
  - (a) an individual does not make an election under this paragraph for a year of assessment on or before the election deadline for that year, and 40
  - (b) an adjustment is made after that deadline to the profits from his provision of foster care on which he is chargeable to tax for that year, the individual may make an election under this paragraph for the year on or before the date specified in sub-paragraph (6).
- (6) That date is – 45

- (a) the first anniversary of the 31st January next following the year of assessment in which the adjustment is made, or
  - (b) such later date as the Board may in any particular case allow.
- (7) Any election under this paragraph must be made in writing to an officer of the Board.

5

*Periods of account ending otherwise than on 5th April*

- 15 (1) This paragraph applies to an individual for a year of assessment for which—
- (a) the individual qualifies for relief under this Schedule,
  - (b) his foster care receipts are the receipts of a trade, profession or vocation, and
  - (c) the period of account in which his foster care receipts accrue ends on a day other than 5th April in that year of assessment.
- (2) If the individual’s total foster care receipts for the period of account do not exceed the relevant limit for that period (see sub-paragraph (6) or (8)) the profits or losses from his trade, profession or vocation for the year of assessment are to be treated as nil.
- (3) If, in a case falling within sub-paragraph (2), the individual would, apart from that sub-paragraph, be entitled to a deduction for the year under section 63A(1) or (3) of the Taxes Act 1988 (overlap profits and overlap losses), the individual is entitled to that deduction notwithstanding that sub-paragraph.
- (4) Sub-paragraph (5) applies where—
- (a) the individual’s total foster care receipts for the period of account exceed the relevant limit for that period, and
  - (b) an election by him under paragraph 14 has effect.
- (5) The profits of the year of assessment of the trade, profession or vocation from which the individual’s foster care receipts arise are—
- (a) the amount of the foster care receipts arising from the trade, profession or vocation for the period of account, less
  - (b) the relevant limit for that period.
- (6) If the period of account in which the individual’s foster care receipts accrue ends in the year 2003-04, “the relevant limit” for that period is found by aggregating—
- (a) the individual’s share of the fixed amount for the year 2003-04 (found in accordance with paragraph 7), and
  - (b) each amount per child for that individual for that period of account.
- (7) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (6), an individual’s amount per child for the period of account is each amount that would be his amount per child by virtue of paragraph 8 for the year 2003-04 if that period of account were the income period for that year.
- (8) If the period of account in which the individual’s foster care receipts accrue ends in a year subsequent to the year 2003-04, “the relevant limit” for that period is found by aggregating—
- (a) the individual’s share of the fixed amount for the year in which the period of account ends (found in accordance with paragraph 7), and

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

- (b) for each of the years of assessment in which the period of account falls, each amount per child for that individual for each part of that period of account which falls within that year of assessment.
- (9) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (8), an individual's amount per child for a part of a period of account is each amount that would be his amount per child by virtue of paragraph 8 for the year of assessment in which the part of that period falls if that part of the period of account were the income period for that year. 5

## PART 3

## CAPITAL ALLOWANCES 10

*Introductory*

- 16 (1) Paragraphs 17 to 19 make provision for the application of the Capital Allowances Act 2001 (c. 2) (“CAA 2001”) in relation to—
- (a) a relevant individual, and
- (b) a relevant chargeable period of that individual. 15
- (2) For this purpose, a “relevant individual” is an individual who, in a year of assessment, satisfies the conditions in sub-paragraphs (3) and (4).
- (3) The first condition is that in the year of assessment the individual would, apart from this Schedule, have foster care receipts chargeable—
- (a) under Case I or II of Schedule D as the profits of a trade, profession or vocation, or 20
- (b) under Case VI of Schedule D as the profits of one or more foster care arrangements.
- (4) The second condition is that—
- (a) the exemption in paragraph 10 or (as the case may be) 15(2) applies to the individual for the year of assessment, or 25
- (b) the individual has elected for the alternative method of calculating profits in paragraph 12, 13 or (as the case may be) 15(5) to apply to him for the year of assessment.
- (5) A period is a “relevant chargeable period” of a relevant individual if— 30
- (a) it is a chargeable period of the individual,
- (b) it corresponds to an income period for the individual's foster care receipts in a year of assessment, and
- (c) that year of assessment is a year in which the individual satisfies the conditions in sub-paragraphs (3) and (4). 35

*Provisions applying in relation to carried forward unrelieved qualifying expenditure*

- 17 (1) This paragraph applies in any case where—
- (a) there is any available qualifying expenditure in a relevant pool for a relevant chargeable period of a relevant individual,
- (b) that expenditure is unrelieved qualifying expenditure carried forward in the pool from the previous chargeable period under section 59 of CAA 2001, and 40
- (c) that previous chargeable period was not a relevant chargeable period.



---

(2)	In any such case, CAA 2001 has effect in relation to the relevant individual's available qualifying expenditure in the pool for the relevant chargeable period as if –	
(a)	a disposal event occurred immediately after the beginning of the period,	5
(b)	disposal receipts fall to be brought into account in the pool for that period by reason of that event, and	
(c)	the total of those disposal receipts equals the amount of the unrelieved qualifying expenditure carried forward in the pool from the previous chargeable period under section 59 of CAA 2001.	10
(3)	In any such case, section 13 of CAA 2001 (use for qualifying activity of plant and machinery provided for other purposes) shall apply as if, on the first day of the first subsequent chargeable period which is not a relevant chargeable period, –	
(a)	the relevant individual brings into use for the purposes of his provision of foster care such of the plant or machinery on which the unrelieved qualifying expenditure was incurred as he still owns on that day, and	15
(b)	he owns that plant or machinery as a result of having incurred capital expenditure on its provision for purposes other than those of the provision of foster care.	20
(4)	In this paragraph “relevant pool” means a pool containing expenditure incurred on the provision of plant or machinery wholly or partly for the purposes of the provision of foster care by the relevant individual.	
	<i>Expenditure incurred in a relevant chargeable period not qualifying expenditure</i>	25
18	Capital expenditure (“excluded capital expenditure”) which is incurred –	
(a)	by a relevant individual,	
(b)	in a relevant chargeable period, and	
(c)	on the provision of plant or machinery wholly or partly for the purposes of the provision of foster care by the individual,	30
	does not constitute qualifying expenditure for the purposes of CAA 2001.	
	<i>Excluded capital expenditure: subsequent treatment of asset</i>	
19	Where a relevant individual incurs excluded capital expenditure in a relevant chargeable period, section 13 of CAA 2001 shall apply as if, on the first day of the first subsequent chargeable period which is not a relevant chargeable period, –	35
(a)	he brings into use for the purposes of his provision of foster care such of the plant or machinery on which the expenditure was incurred as he still owns on that day, and	
(b)	he owns that plant or machinery as a result of having incurred capital expenditure on its provision for purposes other than those of the provision of foster care.	40
	<i>Interpretation of this Part</i>	
20	Expressions which –	
(a)	are used in this Part, and	45

- (b) are used in CAA 2001, but  
(c) apart from this paragraph, are not defined in this Schedule,  
have the same meaning in this Part as in that Act.

## PART 4

## SUPPLEMENTARY

5

*Interpretation*

- 21 In this Schedule –  
 “CAA 2001” means the Capital Allowances Act 2001 (c. 2);  
 “excluded capital expenditure” is to be construed in accordance with  
 paragraph 18; 10  
 “foster care arrangement” has the meaning given in paragraph 2(5);  
 “foster care receipts” is to be construed in accordance with paragraph 3;  
 “income period” is to be construed in accordance with paragraph 3(2)  
 and (3);  
 “profits” includes gains; 15  
 “provision of foster care” has the meaning given in paragraph 4;  
 “relevant chargeable period” is to be construed in accordance with  
 paragraph 16(5);  
 “relevant individual” is to be construed in accordance with paragraph  
 16(2); 20  
 “total foster care receipts” is to be construed in accordance with  
 paragraph 5.

## SCHEDULE 37

Section 177

## LOAN RELATIONSHIPS: AMENDMENTS

## PART 1

25

## AMENDMENTS TO SCHEDULE 9 TO THE FINANCE ACT 1996

*Introductory*

- 1 Schedule 9 to the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) (loan relationships: special  
computational provisions) is amended as follows.

*Late interest*

30

- 2 (1) Paragraph 2 is amended as follows.  
 (2) After sub-paragraph (5) insert –  
 “(5A) A person who is a participator in a company which controls  
 another company shall be treated for the purposes of this  
 paragraph as also being a participator in that other company.”. 35  
 (3) In sub-paragraph (6), in the definition of “participator” (which is expressed  
 to have effect in relation to a close company) omit “close”.

- (4) The amendments made by this paragraph have effect in relation to interest which would, apart from paragraph 2 of Schedule 9 to the Finance Act 1996, be treated as accruing on or after 9th April 2003.

*Continuity of treatment: groups etc*

- 3 (1) Paragraph 12 is amended as follows. 5
- (2) In sub-paragraph (2) (determination of credits and debits to be brought into account) in paragraph (a) (disregard of the transaction or series of transactions except for certain purposes) after “except” insert –
- “(i) for the purpose of determining the debits or credits to be brought into account in respect of exchange gains or losses and identifying the company which is to bring them into account; or 10
- (ii)”.
- (3) In paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph (transferor and transferee deemed to be the same person, except for that purpose) for “that purpose” substitute “those purposes”. 15
- (4) In sub-paragraph (2A) (amount to be brought into account where transferor company uses authorised mark to market basis of accounting) for paragraph (a) substitute –
- “(a) the amount to be brought into account by the transferor company in respect of the transaction, the result of the series of transactions, or the transfer must be – 20
- (i) where an asset is to be brought into account, the fair value of the asset, or of the rights under or interest in the asset, and 25
- (ii) where a liability is to be brought into account, the fair value of the liability,
- as at the date on which the transferee company becomes party to the loan relationship;
- (aa) the amount to be brought into account by the transferee company in respect of the transaction, the result of the series of transactions, or the transfer must be the same as the amount brought into account by the transferor company in respect of the transaction, or, as the case may be, the result of the series of transactions, or the transfer; and”.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (6) (novation: equivalent rights) after “rights” insert “, or (as the case may be) its obligations,”. 35
- (6) After sub-paragraph (7) (cases where rights are “equivalent”) insert –
- “(7A) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (6) above a person’s obligations under a debtor relationship are equivalent to obligations under another such relationship if they subject the holder of the liability representing the relationship – 40
- (a) to the same obligations to the same persons as to capital, interest and dividends, and
- (b) to the same remedies for the enforcement of those obligations, 45
- notwithstanding any difference in the total nominal amounts of the assets representing the corresponding creditor relationships,

in the form in which those assets are held or in the manner in which they can be transferred.”.

- (7) The amendments made by this paragraph have effect where the date on which the transferee company becomes party to the loan relationship falls on or after 9th April 2003. 5

*Discounted securities where companies have a connection*

- 4 (1) In paragraph 17, for sub-paragraph (8) (reference to person standing in the position of creditor to include person indirectly standing in that position) substitute –

“(8) Any reference in this paragraph to a company which stands in the position of a creditor as respects a relevant discounted security includes a reference to a company which indirectly stands in that position by reference to a series of loan relationships or money debts which would be loan relationships if a company directly stood in the position of creditor or debtor.”. 10

- (2) The amendment made by this paragraph has effect in relation to relevant periods beginning on or after 9th April 2003.

- (3) If, in the case of an issuing company, 9th April 2003 falls in a relevant period beginning before that day –

(a) the amendment made by this paragraph also has effect in relation to a proportionate part of the debits of that company relating to the amount of the discount that is referable to that period, and 20

(b) that proportion is the proportion which the part of that period –  
 (i) beginning with 9th April 2003, and  
 (ii) ending with the end of that period, 25  
 bears to the whole of that period.

- (4) Expressions used in sub-paragraph (2) or (3) and in paragraph 17 of Schedule 9 to the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) have the same meaning in that sub-paragraph as in that paragraph.

*Discounted securities of close companies* 30

- 5 (1) Paragraph 18 is amended as follows.

(2) In sub-paragraph (2C) (reference to person standing in the position of creditor to include person indirectly standing in that position) for the words from “includes a reference” to the end of that sub-paragraph substitute “includes a reference to a person who indirectly stands in that position by reference to a series of loan relationships or money debts which would be loan relationships if a company directly stood in the position of creditor or debtor”. 35

- (3) After sub-paragraph (3B) (meaning of “control”) insert –

“(3C) A person who is a participator in a company which controls another company shall be treated for the purposes of this paragraph as also being a participator in that other company.”. 40

- (4) The amendments made by this paragraph have effect in relation to relevant periods beginning on or after 9th April 2003.

- (5) If, in the case of an issuing company, 9th April 2003 falls in a relevant period beginning before that day –
- (a) the amendments made by this paragraph also have effect in relation to a proportionate part of the debits of that company relating to the amount of the discount that is referable to that period, and 5
  - (b) that proportion is the proportion which the part of that period –
    - (i) beginning with 9th April 2003, and
    - (ii) ending with the end of that period,bears to the whole of that period.
- (6) Expressions used in sub-paragraph (4) or (5) and in paragraph 18 of Schedule 9 to the Finance Act 1996 have the same meaning in that sub-paragraph as in that paragraph. 10

## PART 2

### TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

#### *Transitional provisions* 15

- 6 (1) In Schedule 25 to the Finance Act 2002 (c. 23) (loan relationships) in Part 3 (transitional provisions) after paragraph 61 insert –
- “Non-trading deficit carried forward from last old accounting period*
- 61A Any amount carried forward to a new accounting period under subsection (3) of section 83 of the Finance Act 1996 (carry forward of so much of the non-trading deficit on a company’s loan relationships as is not the subject of a claim under subsection (2) of that section) – 20
- (a) shall be disregarded for the purposes of any claim under subsection (2) of that section; and 25
  - (b) shall not be surrendered as group relief by virtue of section 403 of the Taxes Act 1988.”.
- (2) The Finance Act 2002 shall be taken to have been originally enacted with the amendment made by this paragraph.

## SCHEDULE 38

Section 180 30

### SALE AND REPURCHASE OF SECURITIES ETC

#### *Increase of repurchase price of UK securities by amount of deemed manufactured dividend*

- 1 In section 737C of the Taxes Act 1988 (deemed manufactured payments) –
- (a) in subsection (3)(b) (repurchase price of UK equities to be treated as increased by gross amount of deemed manufactured dividend), omit “gross”, and 35
  - (b) omit subsection (4) (definition of gross amount).

*Deemed manufactured payment where transferor or connected person makes payment representative of dividend*

- 2 (1) Section 737A of the Taxes Act 1988 (deemed manufactured payments) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “the conditions set out in subsection (2) below” substitute “either the conditions set out in subsection (2) below or the conditions set out in subsection (2A) below”. 5
- (3) In subsection (2), for “conditions” substitute “first set of conditions referred to in subsection (1) above”.
- (4) After that subsection insert – 10
- “(2A) The second set of conditions referred to in subsection (1) above are that –
- (a) a dividend which becomes payable in respect of the securities is receivable otherwise than by the transferor,
- (b) the transferor or a person connected with him is required under any agreement mentioned in subsection (1) above to make a payment representative of the dividend, 15
- (c) there is no requirement under any such agreement for a person to pay to the transferor on or before the relevant date an amount representative of the dividend, and 20
- (d) it is reasonable to assume that, in arriving at the repurchase price of the securities, account is taken of the circumstances referred to in paragraphs (a) to (c).”.
- (5) In subsection (3), for “subsection (2)” substitute “subsections (2) and (2A)”.
- (6) In subsection (5)(a), after “(2)(a)” insert “or (2A)(a)”. 25
- 3 In section 737C of the Taxes Act 1988 (deemed manufactured payments: further provisions), after “737A(2)(a)” (in each place) insert “or (2A)(a)”.

*Provisions to cover both “put” and “call” options*

- 4 In section 727A(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 (accrued income scheme not to apply to transfers of securities under repo agreements), for the words from “and under” to the end of paragraph (b) substitute “and the transferor or a person connected with him – 30
- (a) is required to buy them back in pursuance of an obligation imposed by, or in consequence of the exercise of an option acquired under, that agreement or any related agreement, or 35
- (b) acquires an option to buy them back under that agreement or any related agreement which he subsequently exercises,”.
- 5 In section 730A(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 (treatment of price differential on sale and repurchase of securities), for paragraph (b) substitute – 40
- “(b) the original owner or a person connected with him –
- (i) is required to buy them back in pursuance of an obligation imposed by, or in consequence of the exercise of an option acquired under, that agreement or any related agreement, or

- (ii) acquires an option to buy them back under that agreement or any related agreement which he subsequently exercises; and”.
- 6 In section 731(2D) of the Taxes Act 1988 (provisions about purchase and sale of securities not to apply to repo agreements etc) for the words from “and, in” to “is entitled” in paragraph (c) substitute “and the original owner – 5
- (a) is required to buy them back in pursuance of an obligation imposed by, or in consequence of the exercise of an option acquired under, that agreement or any related agreement,
- (b) acquires an option to buy them back under that agreement or any related agreement which he subsequently exercises, or 10
- (c) under that agreement or any related agreement, is entitled”.
- 7 In section 737A(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 (deemed manufactured payments), for the words from “and under” to the end of paragraph (b) substitute “and the transferor or a person connected with him – 15
- (a) is required to buy them back in pursuance of an obligation imposed by, or in consequence of the exercise of an option acquired under, that agreement or any related agreement, or
- (b) acquires an option to buy them back under that agreement or any related agreement which he subsequently exercises;” 20
- 8 In section 737E(8) of the Taxes Act 1988 (power to modify provisions about repo arrangements), for paragraph (b) substitute –
- “(b) that person or a person connected with him –
- (i) is required to buy them back in pursuance of an obligation imposed by, or in consequence of the exercise of an option acquired under, that agreement or any related agreement, or 25
- (ii) acquires an option to buy them back under that agreement or any related agreement which he subsequently exercises.” 30
- 9 In paragraph 12(4) of Schedule 7AC to the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12) (exemptions for disposals by companies with substantial shareholding: effect of repurchase agreement), for paragraph (b) substitute –
- “(b) the original owner or a person connected with him – 35
- (i) is required to buy them back in pursuance of an obligation imposed by, or in consequence of the exercise of an option acquired under, that agreement or any related agreement, or
- (ii) acquires an option to buy them back under that agreement or any related agreement which he subsequently exercises.” 40

*Exchange gains and losses*

10 After section 730B of the Taxes Act 1988 insert –

**“730BB Exchange gains and losses on sale and repurchase of securities**

- (1) For the purposes of the Corporation Tax Acts, a company has a relationship to which this section applies in any case where – 5
- (a) the circumstances are as set out in section 730A(1)(a) and (b);
  - (b) the company is the repurchaser of the securities or (subject to subsection (10) below) the interim holder;
  - (c) the conditions in subsection (2) or (3) below are satisfied; and
  - (d) subsection (9) below does not prevent this section from applying, 10
- and references to a relationship to which this section applies, and to a company’s being a party to such a relationship, shall be construed accordingly.
- (2) The conditions in this subsection are that – 15
- (a) the sale price and the repurchase price are expressed in a currency other than sterling;
  - (b) there is a difference between –
    - (i) the sterling equivalent of the sale price as at the date of the transfer of the securities to the interim holder (“the first sum”); and 20
    - (ii) the sterling equivalent of the sale price as at the date they are bought back by the repurchaser (“the second sum”); and
  - (c) the case is not one where section 93 of the Finance Act 1993 (accounts of a company in a currency other than sterling) applies in relation to the company. 25
- (3) The conditions in this subsection are that –
- (a) the case is one where section 93 of the Finance Act 1993 applies in relation to the company; 30
  - (b) the sale price and the repurchase price are expressed in a currency other than the relevant foreign currency (within the meaning of that section) in relation to the company; and
  - (c) there is a difference between –
    - (i) the relevant foreign currency equivalent of the sale price as at the date of the transfer of the securities to the interim holder (“the first sum”); and 35
    - (ii) the relevant foreign currency equivalent of the sale price as at the date they are bought back by the repurchaser (“the second sum”). 40
- (4) Where a company has a relationship to which this section applies and –
- (a) the company is the repurchaser and the first sum exceeds the second sum; or
  - (b) the company is the interim holder and the second sum exceeds the first sum, 45



- the amount of the excess shall be treated for the purposes of the Corporation Tax Acts as an exchange gain (within the meaning of Chapter 2 of Part 4 of the Finance Act 1996 (loan relationships)) arising to the company from the relationship.
- (5) Where a company has a relationship to which this section applies and— 5
- (a) the company is the repurchaser and the second sum exceeds the first sum; or
  - (b) the company is the interim holder and the first sum exceeds the second sum, 10
- the amount of the excess shall be treated for the purposes of the Corporation Tax Acts as an exchange loss (within the meaning of Chapter 2 of Part 4 of the Finance Act 1996 (loan relationships)) arising to the company from the relationship.
- (6) Where an exchange gain or loss is treated by virtue of subsection (4) or (5) above as arising to a company from a relationship to which this section applies— 15
- (a) Chapter 2 of Part 4 of the Finance Act 1996 shall have effect in relation to the exchange gain or loss as it would have effect if it were an exchange gain or loss (as the case may be) arising to the company from a loan relationship to which it is a party; but 20
  - (b) the only debits and credits to be brought into account for the purposes of that Chapter by virtue of this section in respect of the relationship to which this section applies are those relating to the exchange gains and losses, 25
- and, subject to paragraph (b) above, references in the Corporation Tax Acts to a loan relationship accordingly include a reference to a relationship to which this section applies.
- (7) Any question whether debits or credits brought into account in accordance with subsection (6) above in relation to any company— 30
- (a) are to be brought into account under section 82(2) of the Finance Act 1996 (trading loan relationships); or
  - (b) are to be treated as non-trading debits or credits, 35
- shall be determined (subject to Schedule 11 to that Act (insurance companies)) according to the extent (if any) to which the company is a party to the repurchase in the course of activities forming an integral part of a trade carried on by that company.
- (8) To the extent that debits or credits fall to be brought into account by a company under section 82(2) of that Act in the case of a relationship to which this section applies, the company shall be regarded for the purposes of Chapter 2 of Part 4 of the Finance Act 1996 as being a party to the relationship for the purposes of a trade carried on by the company. 40
- (9) Except where regulations under section 737E otherwise provide, this section does not apply if— 45
- (a) the agreement or agreements under which provision is made for the sale and repurchase are not such as would be entered into by persons dealing with each other at arm's length; or

- (b) all of the benefits and risks arising from fluctuations, before the repurchase takes place, in the market value of the securities sold accrue to, or fall on, the interim holder.
- (10) Where—
- (a) the repurchase price is more than the sale price, so that by virtue of section 730A(2)(a) a payment of interest is treated as made by the repurchaser on a deemed loan from the interim holder; but 5
- (b) the payment of interest is treated as made to a person other than the interim holder, 10
- references to the “interim holder” in subsections (1), (4) and (5) above shall be read as references to the person to whom the payment of interest is treated as made.
- (11) Any reference in this section to the “relevant foreign currency equivalent” of an amount is, in the case of any company, a reference to the amount’s equivalent expressed in the relevant foreign currency (within the meaning of section 93 of the Finance Act 1993) in relation to the company. 15
- (12) Expressions used in this section and in section 730A have the same meaning in this section as in that section.”. 20
- 11 (1) Section 737E of the Taxes Act 1988 (power to modify sections 727A, 730A and 737A to 737C) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsections (1) and (2), after “730A” insert “, 730BB”.
- (3) In subsection (3), after “730A” insert “or 730BB”.
- (4) In consequence of the amendments made by this paragraph, the sidenote becomes “Power to modify sections 727A, 730A, 730BB and 737A to 737C”. 25
- 12 In section 100 of the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) (exchange gains and losses on debts etc not arising from the lending of money), after subsection (2) insert—
- “(2A) Where—
- (a) a company has a relationship to which section 730BB of the Taxes Act 1988 applies (exchange gains and losses on sale and repurchase of securities), and 30
- (b) the circumstances mentioned in subsection (1)(a) of that section are such that a money debt arises from the obligation mentioned in section 730A(1)(b)(i) of that Act, 35
- the company shall not be regarded for the purposes of the Corporation Tax Acts as having, by reason of that money debt, a relationship to which this section applies, so far as relating to exchange gains and losses.”.
- Exceptions* 40
- 13 In section 727A(1) of the Taxes Act 1988 (accrued income scheme not to apply to transfers of securities under repo agreements), insert at the end “except in a case where section 730A of the Taxes Act 1988 is prevented from applying by subsection (8) of that section.”.

- 14 In section 730A(8)(b) of the Taxes Act 1988 (treatment of price differential on sale and repurchase: exclusion of cases where all benefits or risks are for interim holder), for “benefits or risks” substitute “benefits and risks”.
- 15 In section 737C(11A) of the Taxes Act 1988 (purposes for which deemed increase of repurchase price has effect), insert at the end “or where that section is prevented from applying by subsection (8) of that section”. 5
- 16 (1) Paragraph 15 of Schedule 9 to the Finance Act 1996 (repo transactions not related transactions for purposes of loan relationship provisions) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (3), after “means” insert “(subject to sub-paragraph (3A))”. 10
- (3) After that sub-paragraph insert—  
“(3A) Arrangements are not repo or stock-lending arrangements if they are excluded from section 730A of the Taxes Act 1988 by subsection (8) of that section.”.
- Connected persons* 15
- 17 In paragraph 15(3)(b) of Schedule 9 to the Finance Act 1996 (repo transactions not related transactions for purposes of loan relationship provisions), omit “, or a person connected with him,”.
- Correction of section 730A(6B) of the Taxes Act 1988*
- 18 In section 730A(6B) of the Taxes Act 1988 (trading loan relationship debits and credits falling to be brought into account under section 82(2))— 20
- (a) for “section 82(2) above” substitute “section 82(2) of the Finance Act 1996”, and
- (b) for “the Finance Act 1996” substitute “that Act”.
- Commencement* 25
- 19 (1) Paragraph 1 has effect in relation to repurchase prices becoming due on or after 9th April 2003.
- (2) Paragraphs 2 to 17 have effect in relation to agreements to sell securities made on or after 9th April 2003.
- (3) Paragraph 18 has effect in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after 1st October 2002. 30

SCHEDULE 39

Section 181

RELEVANT DISCOUNTED SECURITIES: WITHDRAWAL OF RELIEF FOR COSTS AND LOSSES, ETC

*Withdrawal of relief for incidental costs*

- 1 (1) In Schedule 13 to the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) (discounted securities: income tax provisions), paragraph 1 (charge to tax on realised profit comprised in discount) is amended as follows. 35

- (2) In sub-paragraph (2) (meaning of “realising the profit” from the discount on a relevant discounted security) at the end of paragraph (b) insert “(no account being taken of any costs incurred in connection with the transfer or redemption of the security or its acquisition)”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (3)(a) (calculation of profit) omit “reduced by the amount of any relevant costs”. 5
- (4) Omit sub-paragraph (4) (meaning of “relevant costs”).

*Withdrawal of relief for losses*

- 2 Omit paragraph 2 of that Schedule (income tax relief for losses on discounted securities). 10

*Withdrawal of loss relief: exception for strips of government securities*

- 3 After paragraph 14 of that Schedule (gilt strips) insert –

*“Strips of government securities: losses*

- 14A (1) A person who sustains a loss in any year of assessment from the discount on a strip shall be entitled to relief from income tax on an amount of his income for that year equal to the amount of the loss. 15

(2) The relief is due only if the person makes a claim before the end of twelve months from the 31st January following that year.

(3) For the purposes of this paragraph a person sustains a loss from the discount on a strip where – 20

(a) he transfers the strip or becomes entitled, as the person holding it, to any payment on its redemption, and

(b) the amount paid by him for the strip exceeds the amount payable on the transfer or redemption (no account being taken of any costs incurred in connection with the transfer or redemption of the strip or its acquisition). 25

The loss shall be taken to be equal to the amount of the excess, and to be sustained in the year of assessment in which the transfer or redemption takes place.

(4) In sub-paragraph (3) above the reference to a transfer in paragraph (a) includes a reference to a deemed transfer under paragraph 14(4) above (and paragraph (b) shall be read accordingly). 30

(5) This paragraph does not apply in the case of –

(a) any transfer of a strip for the time being held under a settlement the trustees of which are not resident in the United Kingdom, or 35

(b) any redemption of a strip which is so held immediately before its redemption.”.

*Extension of provisions about strips to strips of foreign government securities*

- 4 In the definition of “strip” in paragraph 15(1) of that Schedule, for “is a strip of a gilt-edged security” substitute “is a strip of a security, or would be if that section had effect with the substitution in subsection (1B) of “issued by or on 40

behalf of the government of any territory” for “issued under the National Loans Act 1968”.

*Consequential amendments*

- 5 (1) In paragraph 6 of that Schedule (trustees and personal representatives) –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (3) for “paragraphs 1(1) and 2(1) above do not apply” substitute “paragraph 1(1) above does not apply”; 5
  - (b) omit sub-paragraphs (4) to (6).
- (2) Omit the following provisions of that Schedule –
- (a) paragraph 7 (treatment of losses where income exempt);
  - (b) paragraph 9A (securities issued to connected person etc at price in excess of market value: transfer to connected person); 10
  - (c) paragraph 11 (accrued income scheme).
- (3) In paragraph 14 of that Schedule (gilt strips) –
- (a) for the heading substitute “*Strips of government securities*”;
  - (b) in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3), omit the words “gilt-edged”; 15
  - (c) in sub-paragraph (4), omit the words after paragraph (c).
- (4) In section 710(3) of the Taxes Act 1988 (categories of security not included in accrued income scheme) after paragraph (e) insert –
- “(f) any relevant discounted security within the meaning of Schedule 13 to the Finance Act 1996 (see paragraphs 3 and 14(1) of that Schedule).” 20

*Commencement and transitional provisions*

- 6 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2) –
- (a) the amendments made by paragraphs 1 and 5(3)(c) apply in relation to costs incurred on or after 27th March 2003; 25
  - (b) the amendments made by paragraphs 2, 3 and 5(1), (2) and (4) apply in relation to any loss sustained from the discount on a relevant discounted security transferred or redeemed on or after that date;
  - (c) the amendments made by paragraphs 4 and 5(3)(a) and (b) apply in relation to any security acquired on or after that date. 30
- (2) The amendments mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b) do not apply in relation to costs incurred, or losses sustained, on the transfer or redemption of a relevant discounted security if –
- (a) the person transferring or redeeming the security held it continuously since a time before 27th March 2003, and 35
  - (b) the security was listed on a recognised stock exchange at any time before that date.
- (3) No losses may be carried forward under paragraph 6(6) of Schedule 13 to the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) to any year of assessment after 2002-03.

## SCHEDULE 40

Section 192

## ACQUISITION BY COMPANY OF ITS OWN SHARES

*Venture capital trusts*

- 1 In Schedule 15B to the Taxes Act 1988 (venture capital trusts: relief from income tax), in paragraph 1 (entitlement to claim relief on investment), after sub-paragraph (9) insert – 5
- “(10) An individual is not eligible for relief under this Part of this Schedule by reference to any shares which are treated as issued to him by virtue of section 192(8) of the Finance Act 2003 (tax treatment of disposal by company of its own shares). 10
- (11) Where a company which is a venture capital trust issues to any individual eligible shares to which sub-paragraph (10) above applies, it must –
- (a) at the time of the issue of those shares, give that individual a notice stating that he is not eligible for relief under this Part of this Schedule by reference to those shares, and 15
- (b) no later than three months after the issue of those shares, give a copy of that notice to an officer of the Board.”.

*Stamp duty and stamp duty reserve tax*

- 2 In section 66 of the Finance Act 1986 (c. 41) (stamp duty: company’s purchase of own shares) – 20
- (a) in subsection (2) –
- (i) for “The return which relates to the shares” substitute “Any return which relates to any of the shares”,
- (ii) after “169” insert “(1) or (1B)”, and 25
- (iii) after “transferring the shares” insert “to which it relates”,
- (b) after that subsection insert –
- “(2A) Any return which relates to the cancellation of any of the shares purchased and is delivered to the registrar of companies under section 169A of the Companies Act 1985 shall be chargeable under this subsection with stamp duty of £5.”, and 30
- (c) in subsection (3), after “169” insert “(1) or (1B)”.
- 3 In section 90 of that Act (exemptions from stamp duty reserve tax), after subsection (7) insert – 35
- “(7A) Section 87 above does not apply as regards an agreement to transfer any shares in a company which are held by the company (whether in accordance with section 162A of the Companies Act 1985 (treasury shares) or otherwise).”.
- 4 (1) Section 92 of that Act (stamp duty reserve tax: repayment or cancellation of tax) is amended as follows. 40
- (2) After subsection (1B) insert –
- “(1C) If, as regards an agreement to transfer shares in a company to that company (“the own-shares agreement”) –

- (a) tax is charged under section 87 above, and
  - (b) it is proved to the Board’s satisfaction that at a time in the period of six years beginning on the relevant day (as defined in section 87(3)) the conditions mentioned in subsection (1D) have been fulfilled in respect of those shares, 5
- subsections (2) to (4A) apply.
- (1D) The conditions referred to in subsection (1C) are –
  - (a) that, in relation to the transfer made in pursuance of the own-shares agreement, a return has been made in respect of each of those shares in accordance with section 169(1) or (1B) of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (disclosure by company of purchase of own shares), and 10
  - (b) that any such return has been duly stamped in accordance with section 66.”.
- (3) In subsection (2), after “subsection (1)” insert “or, as the case may be, (1C)”. 15
- 5 In Schedule 13 to the Finance Act 1999 (c. 16) (stamp duty: instruments chargeable and rates of duty), in Part 1 (conveyance or transfer on sale), in paragraph 1 (stamp duty charge), after sub-paragraph (2) insert –
  - “(3) Sub-paragraph (1) is subject to sub-paragraphs (4) to (6).
  - (4) Where a company acquires any shares in itself by virtue of section 162 of the Companies Act 1985 (power of company to purchase own shares) or otherwise, sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to any instrument by which the shares are transferred to the company. 20
  - (5) Where a company holds any shares in itself by virtue of section 162A of that Act (treasury shares) or otherwise, any instrument to which sub-paragraph (6) applies is to be treated for the purposes of this Schedule as a conveyance otherwise than on sale, and paragraph 16 applies accordingly. 25
  - (6) This sub-paragraph applies to any instrument for the sale or transfer of any of the shares by the company, other than an instrument which, in the absence of sub-paragraph (5), would be an instrument in relation to which – 30
    - (a) section 67(2) of the Finance Act 1986 (transfer to person whose business is issuing depositary receipts etc), or
    - (b) section 70(2) of that Act (transfer to person who provides clearance services etc), 35
- applied.”.

SCHEDULE 41

Section 193

COMPANIES IN ADMINISTRATION

*Accounting period for company in administration* 40

- 1 (1) Section 12 of the Taxes Act 1988 (corporation tax: basis of, and periods for, assessment) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (3), after paragraph (d) insert –  
“(da) the company ceasing to be in administration;”.
- (3) After subsection (5A) insert –  
“(5B) For the purposes of subsection (3)(da) a company ceases to be in administration when it ceases to be in administration under Schedule B1 to the Insolvency Act 1986 or any corresponding event occurs otherwise than under that Act.”. 5
- (4) In subsection (7) (accounting periods where company is wound up), after the words “subject to” insert “subsection (7ZA) below and”.
- (5) After subsection (7) insert – 10  
“(7ZA) Notwithstanding anything in subsections (1) to (6) above, where a company enters administration –  
(a) an accounting period of the company shall end immediately before the day the company enters administration, and  
(b) if immediately before the company enters administration it is in the course of being wound up, subsection (7) ceases to apply at the end of that accounting period. 15  
For this purpose a company enters administration when it enters administration under Schedule B1 to the Insolvency Act 1986 or is subject to any corresponding procedure otherwise than under that Act.”. 20
- (6) In subsection (7A) for “subsections (1) to (7)” substitute “subsections (1) to (7ZA)”.

*Responsibility of officers of company in administration*

- 2 (1) Section 108 of the Taxes Management Act 1970 (c. 9) (responsibility of company officers) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In subsection (3)(a) –  
(a) after first “liquidator” insert “or administrator”, and  
(b) after second “liquidator” insert “or, as the case may be, administrator”. 30
- (3) After subsection (3) insert –  
“(4) For the purposes of subsection (3)(a), where two or more persons are appointed to act jointly or concurrently as the administrator of a company, the proper officer is –  
(a) such one of them as is specified in a notice given to the Board by those persons for the purposes of this section, or  
(b) where the Board is not so notified, such one or more of those persons as the Board may designate as the proper officer for those purposes.”. 35

*Tax on companies in administration* 40

- 3 After section 342 of the Taxes Act 1988 (tax on company in liquidation)



insert –

**“342A Tax on companies in administration**

- (1) In this section –
  - (a) references to the relevant event, in relation to a company in administration, are references –
    - (i) to the administrator sending a notice in respect of the company under paragraph 84(1) of Schedule B1 to the Insolvency Act 1986 (company moving from administration to dissolution), or 5
    - (ii) in the case of a company which enters administration otherwise than under that Act, to the doing of any other act for a like purpose, and 10
  - (b) references to a company’s final year are references to the financial year in which the relevant event occurs, and references to the company’s penultimate year are references to the last financial year preceding its final year. 15
- (2) Subject to subsections (3) and (4) –
  - (a) corporation tax shall be charged on the profits of the company arising in the administration in its final year at the rate of corporation tax fixed or proposed for the penultimate year, but 20
  - (b) where the corporation tax charged on the company’s income included in those profits falls to be calculated or reduced in accordance with section 13, it shall be so calculated or reduced in accordance with such rate or fraction fixed or proposed for the penultimate year as is applicable under that section. 25
- (3) If, before the relevant event, any of the rates or fractions mentioned in subsection (2) has been fixed or proposed for the final year, that subsection shall have effect in relation to that rate or fraction as if for the references to the penultimate year there were substituted references to the final year. 30
- (4) If, in the case of the company’s final accounting period, the income (if any) which consists of interest received or receivable by the company under section 826 does not exceed £2,000, that income shall not be subject to corporation tax. 35
- (5) In subsection (4) “the company’s final accounting period” means the last accounting period of the company before the relevant event.
- (6) An assessment on the company’s profits for an accounting period in which the company is in administration shall not be invalid because made before the end of the accounting period. 40
- (7) In making an assessment after the company enters administration and before the date of the relevant event, the administrator may act on an assumption as to when that date will fall so far as it governs section 12(3). 45
- (8) The assumption of the wrong date shall not alter the company’s final and penultimate year and, if the right date is later –

- (a) an accounting period shall end on the date assumed and a new accounting period shall begin, and
  - (b) thereafter, section 12(3) shall apply as if the company had entered administration at the beginning of that new accounting period. 5
- (9) Subsections (7) and (9) of section 342 apply in relation to this section as they apply in relation to that section, except that in subsection (7) of that section the reference to the completion of the winding up is to be read as a reference to the relevant event.
- (10) Where the company entered administration before its final year, paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (2) (but not subsection (3)) apply in relation to the company's profits arising at any time in its penultimate year." 10

*Debit for bad debt where parties connected and creditor insolvent*

- 4 (1) Paragraph 6A of Schedule 9 to the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) (bad debt etc: parties having connection and creditor in insolvent liquidation etc) is amended as follows. 15
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)–
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “has gone into” substitute “is in”,
  - (b) for paragraph (b) substitute – 20
    - “(b) that company is in insolvent administration;”, and
  - (c) in paragraph (d), for “an event has occurred, or circumstances exist,” substitute “circumstances exist”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2)–
- (a) in paragraph (a) for “after the commencement” substitute “in the course”, and 25
  - (b) in paragraph (b) for “when the administration order is in force” substitute “in the course of the administration”.
- (4) For sub-paragraph (3) substitute –
- “(3) For the purposes of this paragraph a company is in insolvent liquidation during the period which – 30
    - (a) begins when it goes into liquidation, as defined in section 247(2) of the Insolvency Act 1986 or Article 6(2) of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989, at a time when its assets are insufficient for the payment of its debts and other liabilities and the expenses of the winding up, and 35
    - (b) ends when the winding up is completed or otherwise brought to an end (whether under paragraph 37 or 38 of Schedule B1 to the Insolvency Act 1986 or otherwise).
- (4) For the purposes of this paragraph a company in administration is in insolvent administration if – 40
- (a) in the case of an administration under Schedule B1 to the Insolvency Act 1986, it entered administration at a time when its assets were insufficient for the payment of its debts and other liabilities and the expenses of the administration, or 45

- (b) in a case where an administration order has effect under Part 3 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989, the order was made at such a time.”.

*Commencement*

- 5 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), this Schedule has effect in relation to companies which enter administration (whether under the Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45) or otherwise) on or after the commencement of section 248 of the Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40) (which substitutes Part 2 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (administration)). 5
- (2) Paragraph 4 has effect in relation to companies which – 10
  - (a) are in insolvent liquidation or insolvent administration immediately before 9th April 2003, or
  - (b) go into insolvent liquidation or insolvent administration on or after that date.
- For this purpose “insolvent liquidation” and “insolvent administration” are to be construed in accordance with paragraph 6A of Schedule 9 to the Finance Act 1996 (c. 8) (as amended by paragraph 4 above). 15

SCHEDULE 42

Section 197

CONTROLLED FOREIGN COMPANIES: EXEMPT ACTIVITIES

*Introductory* 20

- 1 Part 2 of Schedule 25 to the Taxes Act 1988 (controlled foreign companies: exempt activities) is amended as follows.

*Companies engaged in wholesale, distributive, financial or service business*

- 2 (1) Paragraph 6 (meaning of “engaged in exempt activities”) is amended as follows. 25
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(c) (requirement that any of sub-paragraphs (2) to (4A) applies to the company) for “(2) to (4A)” substitute “(2), (3), (4) or (4A)”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2A) (persons from whom less than 50% of the gross trading receipts of a wholesale etc business of the controlled foreign company must be derived) omit the word “and” immediately preceding paragraph (c) and at the end of that paragraph add – “; 30
  - (d) persons not falling within paragraphs (a) to (c) above which are companies resident in the United Kingdom;
  - (e) persons not falling within paragraphs (a) to (c) above which are companies not resident in the United Kingdom which carry on business through a branch or agency in the United Kingdom; 35
  - (f) persons not falling within paragraphs (a) to (c) above who are individuals habitually resident in the United Kingdom;
- but where the company is a controlled foreign company falling within sub-paragraph (2B) below, paragraphs (d) to (f) above shall be disregarded”. 40

- (4) After sub-paragraph (2A) insert –
- “(2B) A controlled foreign company falls within this sub-paragraph if either –
- (a) its main business is the effecting or carrying out of contracts of long-term insurance, other than protection business; or
  - (b) it is a member of an insurance group and its main business is insuring or reinsuring large risks.
- Paragraph 11A below has effect for the interpretation of this sub-paragraph.
- (2C) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(b) above, a company’s gross trading receipts from a business shall be regarded as directly or indirectly derived from a person falling within sub-paragraph (2A)(e) above only to the extent that they are derived directly or indirectly from contracts or other arrangements relating to that person’s branch or agency in the United Kingdom.”.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4C) (which defines for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(b) a “25 per cent assessable interest”, an expression not used in sub-paragraph (2)(b) but used in sub-paragraph (2A)(b)) for “(2)(b)” substitute “(2A)(b)”.

*Companies engaged in business of banking etc*

- 3 (1) Paragraph 11 (provisions relating to wholesale, distributive, financial or service business) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (3) (controlled foreign company engaged in business of banking etc) for paragraph (a) (interest from UK company not to be regarded as receipt derived from connected or associated persons) substitute –
- “(a) no payment of interest received from a company resident in the United Kingdom which is connected or associated with the controlled foreign company shall be regarded for the purposes of paragraph 6(2)(b) above as a receipt derived directly or indirectly from a person falling within paragraph 6(2A) above, but”.
- (3) At the end of paragraph (b) of that sub-paragraph (the capitalisation test) add “, and
- (c) it shall also be conclusively presumed that the condition in paragraph 6(2)(b) is not fulfilled if 10% or more of the company’s gross trading receipts from all businesses carried on by it in the accounting period in question, taken together, are receipts other than interest and are directly or indirectly derived from persons –
    - (i) which are companies resident in the United Kingdom,
    - (ii) which are companies not resident in the United Kingdom but which carry on business through a branch or agency in the United Kingdom, or
    - (iii) who are individuals habitually resident in the United Kingdom,
 but for this purpose a company’s gross trading receipts shall be regarded as directly or indirectly derived from a person

falling within sub-paragraph (ii) above only to the extent that they are derived directly or indirectly from contracts or other arrangements relating to that person’s branch or agency in the United Kingdom”.

*Interpretation of paragraph 6(2B)* 5

4 After paragraph 11 insert –

“11A(1) This paragraph has effect for the interpretation of paragraph 6(2B) above.

(2) “Contract of long-term insurance” means any contract falling within Part II of Schedule 1 to the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001. 10

(3) “Protection business” means contracts of long-term insurance where –

(a) either – 15

(i) the contract has no surrender value; or  
(ii) the consideration consists of a single premium and the surrender value does not exceed the amount of that premium; and

(b) the contract makes no provision for its conversion or extension in a manner which would result in its ceasing to fall within paragraph (a) above; 20

and references to protection business include a reference to reinsurance of protection business.

(4) “Insurance group” shall be construed in accordance with section 255A(5) of the Companies Act 1985 (meaning of “insurance group” in Part 7) but reading Part 7 of that Act – 25

(a) as if it extended to Northern Ireland, and  
(b) as if any reference to a company (within the meaning of that Act) included a reference to a company as defined in Article 3 of the Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1986, 30

but does not include such an insurance group if it falls within sub-paragraph (5) below.

(5) Such an insurance group falls within this sub-paragraph if (within the meaning of that Part as so read) the parent company is a subsidiary undertaking of a parent company which is neither – 35

(a) the parent company of an insurance group; nor  
(b) a subsidiary undertaking of the parent company of an insurance group.

(6) A controlled foreign company is, in accordance with sub-paragraphs (4) and (5) above, a “member of an insurance group” if (within the meaning of that Part as so read) it is the parent company, or a subsidiary undertaking of the parent company, of an insurance group which is by virtue of sub-paragraph (4) above an insurance group for the purposes of paragraph 6(2B) above. 40

(7) A company’s main business is “insuring or reinsuring large risks” if (and only if) – 45

- (a) the company’s main business is the effecting or carrying out of contracts of insurance; and
- (b) 50% or more of its gross trading receipts from that business are derived from insuring or reinsuring large risks.
- “Large risks” is defined in paragraph 11B below. 5
- (8) In this paragraph –
- “contract of insurance” has the meaning given by article 3(1) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001;
- “contract of long-term insurance” has the meaning given by sub-paragraph (2) above. 10
- 11B (1) In paragraph 11A above “large risks” means –
- (a) risks falling within classes 4, 5, 6, 7, 11 and 12 of Part I of Schedule 1 to the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001; 15
- (b) risks falling within classes 14 and 15 of that Part which relate to a business carried on by the policy holder;
- (c) risks falling within classes 3, 8, 9, 10, 13 and 16 of that Part where the policy holder carries on a business in respect of which the condition specified in sub-paragraph (2) below is satisfied. 20
- (2) The condition referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(c) above is that, in the case of that business of the policy holder, at least two of the three following criteria were exceeded in the most recent financial year beginning on or after 1st January 1999 for which the information is available – 25
- (a) balance sheet total: 6.2 million euros;
- (b) net turnover 12.8 million euros;
- (c) number of employees: 250.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above as it applies where the policy holder is a company, within the meaning of section 735(1) of the Companies Act 1985 or Article 3 of the Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1986, – 30
- (a) “balance sheet total” has the meaning given by section 247(5) of that Act or Article 255(5) of that Order; 35
- (b) “net turnover” has the meaning given to “turnover” by section 262(1) of that Act or Article 270(1) of that Order; and
- (c) “number of employees” has the meaning given by section 247(6) of that Act or Article 255(6) of that Order; 40
- and for a financial year which is a company’s financial year but not in fact a year, the net turnover of the company shall be proportionately reduced.
- (4) Where the policy holder is a member of a group for which consolidated accounts (within the meaning of Directive 83/349/EEC) are drawn up, the question whether the condition in sub-paragraph (2) above is met shall be determined by reference to those accounts. 45

- (5) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(c) above as it applies where the policy holder is a professional association, joint venture or temporary grouping, the question whether the condition in sub-paragraph (2) above is met shall be determined by reference to the aggregate of the figures of the description in question for all the members of the professional association, joint venture or temporary grouping. 5
- (6) In sub-paragraphs (1) to (5) above “business” includes a trade or profession and, for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(c) above, any activity of a professional association, joint venture or temporary grouping. 10
- (7) For the purposes of this paragraph, where an amount is denominated in any accounts in a currency other than the euro, it shall be converted into its equivalent in euros using the London closing exchange rate for that currency and the euro for the last day of the period to which the accounts relate. 15
- (8) In this paragraph—  
 “euro” means the single currency adopted or proposed to be adopted as its currency by a member State in accordance with the Treaty establishing the European Community; 20  
 “financial year”, in relation to any person, means the period (not exceeding 12 months) for which that person makes up accounts.”.

SCHEDULE 43

Section 213

REPEALS 25

PART 1

EXCISE DUTIES

(1) GENERAL BETTING DUTY

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Betting and Gaming Duties Act 1981 (c. 63)	Section 5A. In section 5C, subsections (2) and (3) and, in subsection (4), the words “In the case of a bet which is excluded from subsection (2) by virtue of subsection (3),”.	30
1	The repeal of section 5A has effect in accordance with section 6(6) of this Act.	35
2	The repeals in section 5C have effect in accordance with section 7(5) and (6) of this Act.	

## (2) BINGO DUTY

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Betting and Gaming Duties Act 1981 (c. 63)	In Schedule 3 – (a) paragraphs 11, 12 and 15; (b) paragraph 16(2)(b) and the word “or” preceding it.	5

These repeals have effect in accordance with section 9 of this Act.

## (3) AMUSEMENT MACHINE LICENCE DUTY

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Betting and Gaming Duties Act 1981 (c. 63)	In section 26 – (a) the definition of “coin” in subsection (2); (b) subsection (4).	10

These repeals have effect in accordance with section 11(3) of this Act.

15

## (4) VEHICLE EXCISE DUTY

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Vehicle Excise and Registration Act 1994 (c. 22).	Section 16.	

This repeal has effect in accordance with section 16 of this Act.

20

## PART 2

## VALUE ADDED TAX

## FACE-VALUE VOUCHERS

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Value Added Tax Act 1994 (c. 23)	In Schedule 6, paragraph 5.	25

This repeal has effect in accordance with paragraph 4 of Schedule 1 to this Act.

30



PART 3

INCOME TAX, CORPORATION TAX AND CAPITAL GAINS TAX

(1) PROVISION OF SERVICES THROUGH INTERMEDIARY

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1)	Section 49(2). In section 56(7), paragraph (c) and the word “and” preceding it.	5

These repeals have effect in accordance with section 135(4) of this Act.

(2) TAXABLE BENEFITS: CARS: CO<sub>2</sub> EMISSIONS 10

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1)	In the table in section 139(4), in the entry for 2004-05 and subsequent tax years, the words “and subsequent tax years”.	15

(3) APPROVED SHARE PLANS AND SCHEMES

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1)	In section 701(2)(c)(i), the words “or 4 (approved CSOP schemes)”. In Schedule 2, paragraphs 18(1)(a) and 47(3). In Schedule 3, in paragraph 34(5), the words following paragraph (b).	20

## (4) EMPLOYEE SECURITIES AND OPTIONS

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 (c. 1)	In section 19(2), the entries relating to Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3.	
	In section 32(2), the entries relating to Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3.	5
	In section 63(1), the entries relating to Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3.	
	Section 64(5) and (6).	
	Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3.	10
	In section 216 –	
	(a) in subsection (4), the entries relating to Chapters 8 and 9 of Part 3;	
	(b) in subsection (6), the entries relating to sections 195(3) and 199(4).	15
	Section 227(4)(d), (f) and (h).	
	Section 491.	
Sections 494 and 495.		
Section 518.		
Section 519(4).	20	
Section 520.		
Section 523.		
Section 524(4).		
Section 525.		
Section 528.	25	
In section 701(2)(b), the words “subject to section 700(6),”.		
In Part 2 of Schedule 1, the entries listed in paragraph 42(2) of Schedule 22 to this Act.		
In Schedule 7, paragraphs 30, 31, 47, 48, 50 to 53, 55(2)(a), 59 to 62, 66 and 67.	30	
Finance Act 2003	In Schedule 23, in paragraph 31, the entry relating to “subject to forfeiture”.	

These repeals have effect in accordance with Schedule 22 to this Act.

35

## (5) DEDUCTIONS FOR EMPLOYEE BENEFIT CONTRIBUTIONS

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Finance Act 2002 (c. 23)	In Schedule 29, in paragraph 113(3)(a) the words “or benefits” and “, or held by an intermediary,”.	40

These repeals have effect in accordance with paragraph 11(1) of Schedule 24 to this Act.

(6) REFERENCES TO BRANCH OR AGENCY

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Taxes Management Act 1970 (c. 9)	In section 118(1), the definitions of “branch or agency” and “branch or agent”.	
Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)	Section 95(1A)(e).	5
Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12)	In section 10 – (a) subsection (3); (b) in subsection (4), the words “or corporation tax”.	10
Finance Act 1994 (c. 9)	In section 219(4A), the words “11(2)(a) or”.	
Finance Act 1995 (c. 4)	In section 126 – (a) in subsection (1), the words “, corporation tax”; (b) in subsection (2)(c), the words from “or fall” to “non-resident”; (c) in subsection (2), paragraph (d) and the word “and” preceding it; (d) in subsection (9), paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it.	15
	In section 127 – (a) in subsection (5)(b), the words “or 129”; (b) in subsection (19), paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it.	20
	Section 129.	25
Finance (No. 2) Act 1997 (c. 58)	Section 24(3)(e).	

These repeals have effect in relation to accounting periods beginning on or after 1st January 2003.

(7) CAPITAL GAINS TAX: REPORTING LIMITS AND ANNUAL EXEMPT AMOUNT 30

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>
Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12)	Section 3(6).  In Schedule 1, paragraph 2(3).

These repeals have effect in accordance with paragraph 7 of Schedule 28 to this Act. 35

## (8) CHARGEABLE GAINS: EARN-OUT RIGHTS

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12)	In section 138A – (a) in subsection (2), paragraph (c) and the word “and” preceding it; (b) in subsection (4), paragraph (e) and the word “and” preceding it.	5

These repeals have effect in accordance with section 160 of this Act.

## (9) FIRST-YEAR ALLOWANCES FOR EXPENDITURE ON ECO-FRIENDLY PLANT OR MACHINERY 10

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Capital Allowances Act 2001 (c. 2)	In section 39, the word “or” at the end of the entry relating to section 45E. In section 46(1), the word “or” at the end of the entry relating to section 45E. In Part 2 of Schedule 1, in the first column of the entry relating to the expression “long life asset expenditure”, the words “Chapter 10 of”.	15

These repeals have effect in accordance with section 166 of this Act. 20

## (10) RELIEF FOR RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Finance Act 2000 (c. 17)	In Schedule 20, in paragraph 5(3) – (a) the words “the following rules apply”; (b) paragraphs (a) and (b); (c) in paragraph (c), the words “in any other case,”.	25
Finance Act 2002 (c. 23)	In Schedule 12 – (a) in paragraph 7(2), the word “and” preceding paragraph (b); (b) in paragraph 11(3), the word “and” preceding paragraph (b); (c) in paragraph 15(1), the word “or” preceding paragraph (c); (d) in paragraph 17, the word “and” preceding paragraph (c). In Schedule 13, in paragraph 5(3), the word “and” preceding paragraph (d).	30 35

These repeals have effect in accordance with section 167 of this Act. 40

(11) TONNAGE TAX: CAPITAL ALLOWANCES FOR LESSORS

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Finance Act 2000 (c. 17)	In Schedule 22 –	
	(a) the word “finance” in the first sentence of paragraph 41(4), in paragraphs 89(1), 90(1), 92(1), 94(1), 98(1)(a) and 99(1)(a) and in the heading to paragraph 93;	5
	(b) in paragraph 93(1), the words “finance” and “either”;	10
	(c) in paragraph 147, the entry for “finance lease (and lessor and lessee) (in Part X)”.	

These repeals have effect in relation to any lease (within the meaning given by paragraph 5 of Schedule 32 to this Act) entered into on or after 19th December 2002.

15

(12) INSURANCE COMPANIES

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)	Section 432A(9B).	
	In section 432E(2), paragraph (a) and, in paragraph (b), the words “in any other case,”.	20
	In section 436(3)(a), the words after “modifications”.	
	In section 438B(5), paragraph (b) and the word “and” before it.	25
	In section 439B(3)(a), the words “and in particular with the omission of the words “and any amounts of tax which are expended on behalf of” in section 82(1)(a)”.	
	In section 441 –	30
	(a) in subsection (1), the words “and section 441A” (in both places);	
	(b) in subsection (4)(a), the words “and in particular with the omission of the words “and any amounts of tax which are expended on behalf of” in section 82(1)(a)”.	35
	In section 442A(4), the words “to the company”.	
	In Schedule 28AA, in paragraph 5(6)(b), the words “or 88A”.	40

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>
Finance Act 1989 (c. 26)	<p>In section 83 –</p> <p>(a) in subsection (5), paragraph (b) and the word “but” before it;</p> <p>(b) in subsection (6)(c), the words “unless the reinsurer under the contract falls within section 439A of the Taxes Act 1988 (pure reinsurance)”;</p> <p>(c) subsection (6A);</p> <p>(d) in subsection (8), in the definition of “total reinsurance”, the words “before the making of the contract of reinsurance (or, in a case where there are two or more contracts of reinsurance, the last of them)”.</p> <p>In section 83AA –</p> <p>(a) subsections (3) to (5) and (6)(a);</p> <p>(b) in subsection (7), paragraph (b) and the word “and” before it;</p> <p>(c) in subsection (10), the definitions of “the relevant accounting period” and “the transferor company”.</p> <p>Section 83AB(1)(c)(i).</p> <p>In section 83A(2), the second sentence.</p> <p>Section 84(1).</p> <p>In section 87(6)(b), the words “, disregarding section 76(1)(e) of that Act (as set out in subsection (2) above,”.</p> <p>In section 88(1), the words “and section 88A”.</p> <p>Section 88A.</p> <p>In section 89 –</p> <p>(a) in subsection (1), the words “or, as the case may be, basic life assurance and general annuity business”;</p> <p>(b) in subsection (7), the definition of “the Prudential Sourcebook (Insurers)”.</p>
Finance Act 1990 (c. 29)	Section 43.
Finance Act 1991 (c. 12)	<p>In Schedule 7 –</p> <p>(a) in paragraph 1(a), the words “and (e)”;</p> <p>(b) paragraph 11.</p>
Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992 (c. 12)	<p>In section 204(4), the words from “and in subsection (3)” onwards.</p> <p>Section 211(1A).</p> <p>In section 212(7), the words following paragraph (b).</p> <p>In Schedule 7AD, in paragraph 10(1), the definitions of “insurance company”, “long-term business” and “long-term insurance fund”.</p> <p>In Schedule 7B, in paragraph 1, the words “(as defined in section 431(2) of the Taxes Act)”.</p>

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Finance Act 1996 (c. 8)	In Schedule 6, paragraph 26. In Schedule 11 – (a) in paragraph 4(2), the word “net” (in both places); (b) in paragraph 4(16), the definition of “net income and gains”.	5
Finance Act 2000 (c. 17)	In Schedule 30, paragraph 18(3).	
Finance Act 2002 (c. 23)	In Schedule 25, paragraph 46.	
1	The repeals in sections 432A, 436, 439B and 441(4)(a) of the Taxes Act 1988, the repeals in sections 83(5), 83AA and 83AB of the Finance Act 1989 and the repeals in the Finance Act 1990, the Finance Act 2000 and the Finance Act 2002 have effect for periods of account beginning on or after 1st January 2003.	10
2	The repeals in section 432E of the Taxes Act 1988 have effect in accordance with paragraph 9(5) of Schedule 33 to this Act.	15
3	The repeals in section 438B of, and in Schedule 28AA to, the Taxes Act 1988, the repeal in section 88 of the Finance Act 1989, the repeal of section 88A of that Act, the repeal in section 89(1) of that Act and the repeal in Schedule 6 to the Finance Act 1996 have effect for the financial year 2003 and subsequent financial years.	20
4	The repeal in section 442A of the Taxes Act 1988 has effect in accordance with paragraph 21(5) of Schedule 33 to this Act.	
5	The repeals in section 83(6)(c) and (8) of the Finance Act 1989 have effect in accordance with paragraph 2(11) of that Schedule.	25
6	The repeals in section 87 of the Finance Act 1989, paragraph 1(a) of Schedule 7 to the Finance Act 1991 and Schedule 11 to the Finance Act 1996 have effect in accordance with paragraph 8(4) of that Schedule.	
	(13) LIFE INSURANCE POLICIES ETC	30

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)	In section 1A(2), the word “and” at the end of paragraph (b). Section 540(2). In Schedule 15, in paragraph 3(8), the words from “and” preceding paragraph (b)(iii) to the end of paragraph (c).	35
1	The repeal in section 1A of the Taxes Act 1988 has effect in accordance with section 172 of this Act.	
2	The repeal of section 540(2) of that Act has effect in accordance with section 170 of, and Part 4 of Schedule 34 to, this Act.	40

- 3 The repeal in Schedule 15 to that Act has effect in accordance with section 171(6) of this Act.

## (14) LOAN RELATIONSHIPS: LATE INTEREST

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Finance Act 1996 (c. 8)	In Schedule 9, in paragraph 2(6), in the definition of “participator”, the word “close”.	5

This repeal has effect in accordance with paragraph 2(4) of Schedule 37 to this Act.

10

## (15) REPOS ETC

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)	In section 737C – (a) in subsection (3)(b), the word “gross”; (b) subsection (4).	15
Finance Act 1996 (c. 8)	In Schedule 9, in paragraph 15(3)(b), the words “, or a person connected with him,”.	

- 1 The repeals in the Taxes Act 1988 have effect in accordance with subparagraph (1) of paragraph 19 of Schedule 38 to this Act.
- 2 The repeal in the Finance Act 1996 has effect in accordance with subparagraph (2) of that paragraph.

20

## (16) RELEVANT DISCOUNTED SECURITIES

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Finance Act 1996 (c. 8)	In Schedule 13 – (a) in paragraph 1(3)(a), the words “reduced by the amount of any relevant costs”; (b) paragraph 1(4); (c) paragraph 2; (d) paragraph 6(4) to (6); (e) paragraphs 7, 9A and 11; (f) in paragraph 14(2) and (3), the words “gilt-edged”; (g) in paragraph 14(4), the words after paragraph (c).	25 30
Finance Act 2002 (c. 23)	Section 104(3).	35



These repeals have effect in accordance with paragraph 6 of Schedule 39 to this Act.

(17) COURT COMMON INVESTMENT FUNDS

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)	In section 469A – (a) in subsection (2), the words “(subject to subsection (3) below)”; (b) subsection (3).	5

These repeals have effect in relation to income arising to a common investment fund (within the meaning of section 182 of this Act) on or after 6th April 2003. 10

PART 4

OTHER TAXES 15

(1) INHERITANCE TAX: AUTHORISED UNIT TRUSTS

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Inheritance Tax Act 1984 (c. 51)	In section 178(1), in the definition of “qualifying investments”, the words “(as defined in section 468 of the Taxes Act 1988)”.	20
Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)	In Schedule 29, in the table in paragraph 32, the entry relating to section 178(1) of the Inheritance Tax Act 1984.	

These repeals have effect in relation to transfers of value and other events occurring on or after 16th October 2002. 25

## (2) CLIMATE CHANGE LEVY

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Finance Act 2000 (c. 17)	In Schedule 6 –	
	(a) paragraph 15(5);	
	(b) in paragraph 41(1)(c), the words “for any period”;	5
	(c) in paragraph 100(1), the words “for an accounting period”;	
	(d) paragraph 148(6);	
	(e) in paragraph 149(1), the words “the percentage that is to be stated in a certificate under paragraph 148 as”.	10

These repeals, except the ones in paragraphs 41(1)(c) and 100(1), have effect in accordance with section 186(5) of this Act.

15

## PART 5

## MISCELLANEOUS

## (1) EXCHANGE OF INFORMATION BETWEEN TAX AUTHORITIES OF MEMBER STATES

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Finance Act 1978 (c. 42)	Section 77.	20
Finance Act 1980 (c. 48)	Section 17.	
Finance Act 1990 (c. 29)	In section 125, subsection (5) and the words after “appoint” in subsection (6).	
Finance Act 1993 (c. 34)	Section 22.	

25

## (2) CONTROLLED FOREIGN COMPANIES: EXEMPT ACTIVITIES

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)	In Part 2 of Schedule 25, in paragraph 6(2A), the word “and” preceding paragraph (c).	

This repeal has effect in accordance with section 197 of this Act.

30

(3) AUTHORISED UNIT TRUSTS: INTEREST DISTRIBUTIONS

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1)	Section 468O(2) to (4). In section 468P – (a) subsection (4); (b) in subsection (5), the words “or (4)” and the words “or, as the case may be, resident” (in both places); (c) subsections (8) and (9).	5
Finance Act 1996 (c. 8)	In Schedule 7, paragraph 17.	10
Finance Act 2002 (c. 23)	Section 96(3)(a).	

These repeals have effect in relation to interest distributions made on or after 16th October 2002.

(4) NATIONAL SAVINGS 15

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
Finance Act 1980 (c. 48)	In section 120, subsections (4), (5) and (8) and, in subsection (9), the words “and subsection (8) above from the passing of this Act”.	
Finance Act 1998 (c. 36)	In section 162, subsection (1)(a), and the word “and” before it, and subsections (2) and (5).	20

(5) OTHER FINANCIAL MATTERS

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>	
National Loans Act 1968 (c. 13)	Section 15(3). Section 19(3). Section 21(3). In Schedule 5A – (a) paragraph 8 (and the heading before it); (b) paragraph 13(2).	25     30
Finance Act 1982 (c. 39)	Section 152(3).	

The repeal of section 21(3) of the National Loans Act 1968 has effect in accordance with section 209(5) of this Act.

# Finance Bill

---

---

A

## B I L L

To grant certain duties, to alter other duties, and to amend the law relating to the National Debt and the Public Finance, and to make further provision in connection with finance.

*Ordered to be brought in by  
the Chairman of Ways and Means,  
Mr Chancellor of the Exchequer,  
Mr Secretary Prescott, Mr Secretary Blunkett,  
Mr Secretary Milburn, Mr Secretary Smith,  
Ms Secretary Hewitt, Mr Secretary Clarke,  
Mr Paul Boateng, Dawn Primarolo,  
Ruth Kelly and John Healey.*

---

*Ordered, by The House of Commons,  
to be Printed, 14th April 2003.*

---

© Parliamentary copyright House of Commons 2003  
*Applications for reproduction should be made in writing to the Copyright Unit,  
Her Majesty's Stationery Office, St. Clements House, 2-16 Colegate, Norwich, NR3 1BQ*

PUBLISHED BY AUTHORITY OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS  
LONDON: THE STATIONERY OFFICE  
Printed in the United Kingdom by  
The Stationery Office Limited  
£x.xx net